5/3

INFORMATION REPORT - INFORMATION REPORT

HR70-14

CENTRAL INTELLIGENCE AGENCY

S-E-C-R-E-T

D11829 #1

COUNTRY USSR

SUBJECT Soviet 1962 Field Service Regulations

REPORT NO. CS DB-3/652,360

DATE DISTR. 30 April 1963

NO. PAGES 295

DATE OF INFO. 30 March 1962

PLACE & DATE ACQ. USSR

THIS IS UNEVALUATED INFORMATION. SOURCE GRADINGS ARE DEFINITIVE. APPRAISAL OF CONTENT IS TENTATIVE.

SOURCE: A usually reliable Soviet source Documentary.

Appraisal of Content:

Attached is a copy of a SECRET Soviet publication titled Field Service Regulations of the Armed Forces of the USSR (Division - Regiment). This draft document was sent to press on 30 March 1962 in Moscow. It was printed in at least 100 copies and was circulated among selected military personnel for their comments; the final version may therefore differ somewhat from this document.

S-E-C-R-E-T

5 4 3 2 1

5 4 3 2 1

STATE	2	ARMY	50	NAVY	6	AIR	10	NSA	2	OCR	1	DIA	10	JCS	1
								ONE	1	OCI	1	NIC	1	ORR	1

(Note: Washington distribution indicated by "X"; Field distribution by "#".)

INFORMATION REPORT - INFORMATION REPORT

TRANSLATOR'S NOTE: Several Soviet Army terms used in the original Russian text do not have precise English equivalents. The following are some of these terms and an explanation of their treatment in translation:

a. Soyedineniye refers to a corps, division, or brigade. The components may be of a single arm or of various arms and services. In this translation, soyedineniye has been translated as "large unit".

b. Chast designates a unit of regimental or smaller size that is administratively self-contained and separately numbered, e.g., a rifle regiment, the engineer battalion of a rifle division, or a signal battalion. In this translation, chast has been translated as "unit".

c. Podrazdeleniye refers to a subunit of a chast. It is a unit which cannot be identified numerically except by reference to the unit of which it is a component, e.g., a battalion, company, or platoon of a rifle regiment, a battalion or battery of an artillery regiment, or a company of an engineer or signal battalion. In this translation, podrazdeleniye has been translated as "subunit".

d. Obyedineniye refers to an army or front, and has been translated as "formation".

e. Sily i sredstva refers to personnel and the equipment or weapons associated with them, and has been translated as "forces and means", "forces and equipment", or "forces and weapons".

f. Voyska has been rendered as "troops" except in the phrase sukhoputnyye voyska, which has been translated by the conventional phrase "ground forces".

g. Komandir is generally used herein to refer to the officer in command of a soyedineniye, chast, or podrazdeleniye, and has been translated "commanding officer". Nachalnik and komanduyushchiy are used to identify the officer in command of an obyedineniye. Both words have been translated "commander". When nachalnik is used to refer to the officer in command of a combat arm, it has been translated "commander", and when it relates to a service element, it has been translated as "chief".

MINISTRY OF DEFENSE OF THE UNION OF SSR'S

DRAFT [SEAL] SECRET
Copy No.___

FIELD SERVICE REGULATIONS
OF THE ARMED FORCES OF
THE UNION OF SSR'S
(DIVISION — REGIMENT)

MILITARY PUBLISHING HOUSE
MINISTRY OF DEFENSE OF THE USSR

MOSCOW — 1962

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Under the supervision of Major-General P. G. Yesaulov and Editor Colonel M. P. Dukhachev

Sent for typesetting 14 March 1962

Signed for the press 30 March 1962

Paper format 70X90⅛ — 27 printer's sheets = 31.50 provisional printer's sheets

Publication No. 3/793 S Order No. 2467 S

Chapter 1

The Principles of Combined-Arms Combat

1. Modern Combat, Means of Combat, the Ground Forces, Their Composition and the Combat Role of the Arms of Troops

1. The Armed Forces of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, equipped with the most powerful modern weapons and combat equipment and utterly devoted to their Motherland and to the great cause of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union, are called upon to provide reliable protection for the peaceful labor of the Soviet people, who are building Communism.

To discharge this sacred duty, they must be ready at any moment to deal a shattering rebuff to any imperialist aggressor who dares to encroach on our Motherland and on other countries of the Socialist Camp.

The Soviet Armed Forces will wage combat operations until the enemy is completely destroyed.

2. Combat is the only way of attaining victory. Defeat of the enemy and victory in combat are achieved by powerful strikes by fire from all types of weapons and by vigorous and decisive operations by the troops. All their actions must be inspired by the aim to achieve victory.

The decision to smash the enemy must be irrevocable and carried through to the end. It is the duty of a commander to inspire all his subordinates with this resolution.

3. The appearance of new means of combat, especially of nuclear weapons and missiles, of a large number of tanks and various other kinds of combat equipment, the complete motorization of the ground forces, as well as the extensive employment of aircraft and airborne forces using new ways of making landings bring about radical changes in the nature of combat operations.

Modern means of combat make it possible to deliver sudden shattering strikes against the enemy to a great depth and to crush him in a short time, and they give combat a highly mobile and decisive character.

Combat operations develop on a wide front along axes with considerable gaps between them and with open flanks. This creates favorable conditions for moving troops forward swiftly to a great depth, for maneuvering rapidly on the battlefield with the aim of striking at the enemy's flanks and rear, and for surrounding and annihilating him piecemeal. Under these conditions, the significance of independent and enterprising action on the part of large units and units is greatly enhanced.

The characteristic features of modern combat are also the short duration of combat operations, sharp changes in the situation, the intense struggle to attain and keep both the initiative and fire superiority over the enemy, and the presence of large zones of contamination and mass ruin.

4. Success in combat is achieved by the joint efforts of all arms of troops of the ground forces with their diverse combat equipment and of troops of other branches of the Armed Forces. Therefore, modern combat is combined-arms combat. It is waged both with the employment of nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction and also without their employment, extensive use being made only of conventional means of destruction and, above all, of the fire and striking power of tanks, of artillery fire, and aircraft strikes.

5. Modern combat requires of troops the skilful use of all the might of the weapons of destruction, of combat and special equipment, a high degree of organization and the exertion of all their moral and physical powers; thus, it enhances the role and significance of the Soviet soldier immeasurably.

Utter devotion of Soviet soldiers to their people, to the Socialist Motherland, and to the great cause of building Communism, and also their high moral and combat qualities, greatly increase the combat capabilities of the troops and cause them to display intense aggressiveness, decisiveness in operations, and mass heroism and bravery in combat.

The successful conduct of combat operations demands of Soviet soldiers excellent training, firm military discipline, and physical toughness. They must have thorough knowledge of combat equipment, be able to handle weapons well, and to use them skilfully in combat.

Concern about Soviet soldiers is the most important duty of all commanding officers (komandir) and commanders (nachalnik). Commanders achieve this by knowing their subordinates, by constant improvement of their combat and political training, by

mixing with them, by paying attention to their daily military needs, and by timely recommendation of them for decorations for their heroic deeds.

6. Nuclear Weapons are the most powerful means of destruction in modern combat. Their skilful employment enables one in a short space of time to inflict heavy losses in personnel and equipment, to bring about great destruction of engineering works, of inhabited places, and other objectives, to create zones of radioactive contamination, and also to provide great moral inspiration for the troops, ensuring thereby favorable conditions for routing the enemy completely.

Nuclear weapons are used suddenly, in a mass way, and usually on the main axis to fulfil the most important tasks facing the troops.

The use of nuclear weapons is put into effect by delivering massed, group, or single nuclear strikes.

A massed nuclear strike is made on the decision of the senior commander with the aim of striking at several of the enemy's most important groupings of troops and other objectives, the destruction (neutralization) of which can have a decisive influence on the rout of the enemy and the successful fulfilment of their tasks by the troops.

A group nuclear strike is delivered against one large objective simultaneously by several nuclear warheads. In doing this, as a rule, the zones of destruction of each nuclear warhead should not overlap.

A single nuclear strike is delivered with one nuclear warhead against an enemy objective, including a big one.

Group and single nuclear strikes are carried out on the decision both of the senior commander and of the divisional commanding officer.

7. The selection of the means for delivering nuclear warheads to the target, the yield, and the type and height of the nuclear burst depend on the importance of the objective, its size, the nature of the operations and the extent to which the enemy troops earmarked for annihilation or neutralization are under cover, the tasks of one's own troops in whose interests nuclear weapons are being used, and their safety, as well as on the special features of the terrain and weather conditions.

Air nuclear bursts are carried out when delivering nuclear strikes against enemy troops located in the open and against targets not firmly constructed, especially in those cases when radioactive contamination of the terrain cannot be allowed owing to impending operations over it by one's own troops. Air bursts can be at low or high altitudes. In the case of a low air burst, dangerous radioactive contamination of the terrain may result in the area /2 or 3 words missing/.

Ground nuclear bursts are carried out when delivering nuclear strikes against targets which are firmly constructed, and also in those cases where simultaneously with the infliction of mass destruction on the enemy it is essential to create heavy radioactive contamination in the area of the burst and along the route over which the radioactive cloud will move, thereby disrupting the enemy's maneuvers or delaying his operations.

8. Chemical weapons are intended for inflicting mass losses on the enemy personnel, as well as for impeding the combat operations of his troops and the work of his rear services. Such weapons are used suddenly and in a massed way.

To fulfil local tasks, chemical weapons can be used on the decision of the divisional commanding officer.

9. Objectives against which nuclear and chemical weapons are to be used are selected at such a distance that the safety of one's own troops at the moment of delivering strikes against them will be ensured. To enable the troops to take the essential protective measures, they must be given timely warning about the delivery of strikes against the enemy. At the same time signals are arranged for cancelling or shifting strikes in connection with changes in the situation.

In all cases it is essential to take the meteorological conditions into account in order to preclude damage to one's own troops operating on the axis along which the radioactive cloud is moving.

10. The Ground Forces are one of the main branches of the Armed Forces. They play the decisive role in the final rout of the enemy on the ground. Exploiting the results of strikes by strategic and operational weapons, as well as of their own fire strikes, and making extensive use of airborne forces, the ground forces are capable of conducting a swift offensive, of defeating the enemy troops decisively and seizing his territory, as well as of firmly holding positions and areas already occupied.

The ground forces consist of the following arms of troops: motorized rifle, tank, airborne, missile and artillery troops, and also antiair defense troops. To support the combat activities of ground forces, special troops are included in their composition: engineer, chemical, signal, radio and radiotechnical troops of special purpose (OSNAZ), transport, road construction, and others.

11. Motorized rifle troops, equipped with powerful armament and diverse combat equipment, including fast armored means of transport with high cross-country ability, can carry out marches rapidly over great distances and maneuver quickly on the battlefield, can wage decisive combat operations at a high tempo at any time of the year or day or night, in all weather, and on any terrain, both in combat vehicles as well as in dismounted formation.

The motorized rifle division (motorized rifle regiment) is a combined-arms tactical large unit (unit). In coordination with units of other arms of troops, with aircraft and neighboring troops, a division (regiment) is capable of inflicting decisive defeat on the enemy in a meeting engagement, of breaking through his defense from the march and developing an attack quickly in great depth, of maneuvering rapidly on the battlefield, of pursuing the enemy relentlessly, of forcing water obstacles from the march, of defending a zone (sector) of the terrain stubbornly, and also of carrying out other combat tasks.

To ensure high speeds for an offensive, motorized rifle units and subunits must be constantly ready for operations in the role of tactical airborne forces landing from helicopters.

12. Tank troops constitute the chief striking power of the ground forces. They have great fire power, great mobility and maneuverability on and off roads, and high resistance to nuclear weapons.

The combat characteristics of tank troops enable them to exploit the results of the use of nuclear weapons and of other means of mass destruction in the most effective way, to carry out vigorous, highly mobile operations, and to inflict decisive defeat on an enemy in a short time, as well as to overcome large zones of contamination quickly.

Tank troops are employed primarily on the main axes to fulfil the most important tasks connected with the delivery of powerful strikes in depth against the enemy, especially on the axes of employment of nuclear weapons.

Tank troops consist of tank large units, as well as of tank units and subunits, incorporated in motorized rifle large units (units) and airborne large units.

Tank and heavy tank divisions (regiments) are combined-arms tactical large units (units).

A tank division (regiment), using the striking power of tanks, is capable by means of fire by direct laying and fire from concealed firing positions of preparing and rapidly delivering powerful strikes against the enemy in a meeting engagement and of quickly routing him; it can carry out a broad maneuver on the battlefield, break through the enemy's defense from the march at high speed and force water obstacles along the bottom and under water by using crossing equipment, develop an offensive rapidly in great depth, and conduct combat operations when cut off from its own troops; it can pursue the enemy relentlessly, destroy his means of nuclear attack, seize advantageous positions and other important objectives, and also set up a firm defense in a short space of time and successfully combat the enemy's tanks.

A heavy tank division (regiment) is intended mainly for combating the enemy's tank large units (units). Having great fire and striking power, it is capable of inflicting decisive defeat on the enemy's tank troops in a meeting engagement, of breaking through the enemy's prepared defense from the march, and of repelling the counterstrikes of his tank groupings, and also in [one line missing] of successfully repulsing the offensive of enemy tanks in defense.

Tank large units and units fulfil their combat tasks usually in coordination with large units and units of other arms of troops and branches of the Armed Forces, and when operating cut off from their own troops -- above all with aviation, missile troops, and airborne forces.

In fulfilling combat tasks, tank subunits must make extensive use in combat of concentrated fire by direct laying at the maximum possible ranges.

13. Airborne troops are intended for combat operations in the enemy's rear as operational and tactical airborne forces with the aim of supporting their own troops advancing at high speeds, as well as for surrounding and annihilating the enemy. They are employed in coordination with other large units and units of ground forces, and above all with tank and missile troops, as well as with aviation and the navy.

The operations of airborne forces must be distinguished by intense aggressiveness in combat, mobility and boldness in delivering sudden strikes against the enemy's rear and flanks, as well as by great independence on the part of units and subunits in fulfilling their combat tasks.

An airborne division is a combined-arms operational-tactical large unit, whereas a parachute-landing [one line missing] of the enemy; the division (regiment) carries out combat tasks with the aim of providing support for high tempos of an offensive of troops operating from a front, of helping them to surround and annihilate the enemy's groupings, of preventing the enemy's withdrawal and the moving up of reserves, of destroying his weapons of mass destruction, of disorganizing troop control, and breaking up the work of his rear services.

14. The missile troops and artillery of the ground forces have very great firepower, can fire at long ranges, and are capable of broad maneuver and of concentrating fire in short periods of time. They are intended for destroying and neutralizing the enemy's means of nuclear attack, his personnel, his tanks, fire weapons, and other objectives.

Missile troops constitute the main firepower of the ground forces. They consist of large units and units of operational-tactical missiles, of tactical missiles, and of missile-technical units. Missile units which are not included in the composition of the ground forces and the other branches of the Armed Forces, form the Reserve of the Supreme Command (Verkhovnoye glavnokomandovaniye).

Artillery consists of large units, units, and subunits of gun, howitzer, rocket, and tank-destroyer artillery, and of antitank guided missiles and mortars. Artillery which is organizationally included in the composition of armies, combined-arms large units, units, and subunits, constitutes the organic artillery which [one line missing]... in the composition of organic artillery, forms separate artillery large units and units of the Reserve of the Supreme High Command.

15. Antiair defense troops of the ground forces are intended for covering troops and important rear area installations against enemy air strikes. They consist of antiaircraft missile units, antiaircraft artillery, subunits of antiaircraft machine guns, radiotechnical, and other special units of subunits. Antiaircraft missile units constitute the main fire weapon of antiair defense.

Antiair defense troops are capable, in coordination with fighters and independently, of destroying missiles and aircraft, of neutralizing the air enemy's radiotechnical means by jamming, of conducting radar reconnaissance, of warning one's own troops and installations, and also of combating the enemy's airborne forces.

Antiaircraft artillery can be employed to combat the enemy on the ground, primarily his tanks, and in coastal areas — to combat his warships and landing craft.

16. Engineer troops are intended for engineer support of all the combat operations of large units and units with extensive use of engineer equipment and mechanized means of work. Their duties are: engineer reconnaissance; preparation and maintenance of routes for movement and maneuver; support for the overcoming of obstacles and demolitions; preparation and maintenance of river crossings; erection of shelters at control points and the making of component parts for structures; setting up of various engineer obstacles; carrying out engineer measures to eliminate the consequences of the enemy's nuclear attacks; carrying out the most complicated work for camouflaging troops and objectives; and providing water and maintaining water supply points.

Engineer troops consist of combat engineer, road construction, ferrying, bridging, fieldworks construction, and other special large units, units, and subunits.

17. Chemical troops are intended for carrying out measures to protect troops against weapons of mass destruction. Their duties are: treatment of personnel exposed to contamination by radioactive and toxic substances and bacteriological agents; decontamination, degassing, and disinfection of arms and combat equipment; degassing of terrain and roads; conducting radiation and chemical reconnaissance: ensuring control of the exposure of personnel to radiation and the level of contamination of arms and combat equipment by radioactive and toxic substances; and checking changes in the level of contamination of the terrain.

Chemical troops consist of large units, units, and subunits of chemical defense, of radiation and chemical reconnaissance and degassing of terrain [3 or 4 words missing].

18. Signal troops are intended for setting up and maintaining uninterrupted communications, thereby ensuring reliable control of troops in all their various combat activities.

Signal troops consist of signal subunits, units, and large units. In their composition are also included special-purpose (SPETSNAZ) radio units intended for jamming the radio, radio-relay, and radar equipment, and the television of the enemy's ground forces.

19. Radio and radiotechnical troops of special purpose (OSNAZ) are intended for reconnaissance of the enemy's radio-relay and photo-television communications and his system for radio remote control, radar, and radio navigation.

They consist of radio-reconnaissance and radiotechnical reconnaissance units and subunits.

20. Motor troops are intended for ensuring troop mobility, for bringing up supplies, and for evacuation.

21. Road troops are intended for repairing, restoring, and building motor roads and bridges, for maintaining them in usable condition, and for commandant's service on them.

2. Participation of Other Branches of the Armed Forces in Combined-Arms Combat

22. Strategic missile troops can, in support of the ground forces, destroy the enemy's weapons of nuclear attack, his aircraft on airfields, and large troop groupings; they can destroy important installations located in great depth, upset troop control, and also disrupt military movements and disorganize the work of the enemy's transport services.

23. The air forces consist of front, long-range, and military-transport aviation, of units of automatic balloons (avtomaticheskiy aerostat) and of space means (kosmicheskoye sredstvo). Depending on the purpose for which it is intended and the nature of the tasks to be carried out, the air forces are divided into different arms of aviation: fighter, fighter-bomber, bomber (missile carrying), reconnaissance, and support. Front aviation also includes in its composition units of front cruise missiles.

Front aviation is intended for supporting the combat operations of ground forces. In their interests, front aviation fulfils the following tasks:

—fighter aviation—in coordination with antiair defense troops, it covers troops and installations in the rear area against strikes and reconnaissance from the air,

destroying the enemy's aircraft and unmanned means of attack from the air; in addition, fighter aviation can be employed to conduct aerial reconnaissance, and in certain cases to attack ground targets situated in the open;

—fighter-bomber aviation—supports troops by destroying primarily mobile, small, and newly detected targets, especially the enemy's means of nuclear attack, his reserves moving up and his radio-technical means of control and it is also used for aerial reconnaissance;

—bomber aviation (missile carrying)—destroys the enemy's means of nuclear attack, his troops, aircraft on airfields, control points, and supply depots located outside the range of fighter-bombers, and it is also used for aerial reconnaissance;

—reconnaissance aviation—conducts aerial reconnaissance of the enemy, the terrain, and the weather;

—units of front cruise missiles—deliver strikes against objectives which are poorly covered by antiair defense weapons or after these weapons have been reliably neutralized by ballistic missiles; the coordinates of objectives which are to be hit by cruise missiles must be determined accurately;

—support aviation—lands tactical airborne forces from helicopters in the enemy's rear, and also transports subunits and supplies by air; it watches the enemy from the air and corrects artillery fire; it carries out communications, radio countermeasures, and evacuation of the sick and wounded.

Long-range aviation can be employed in the interests of ground forces to deliver strikes against important objectives in the enemy's operational depth which are not attacked by operational-tactical missiles and by front aviation.

Military-transport aviation lands [one line missing], transports troops and various loads by air.

24. Antiair defense troops of the country can, in the interests of ground forces, destroy the air enemy in the air, neutralize his radio technical means by jamming, and also annihilate airborne forces. Large units and units of the anti-

air defense troops of the country may be employed to defend important installations of the front and of the navy.

Antiair defense troops of the country consist of large units and units of antiaircraft missile troops, fighter aviation, and radiotechnical troops, as well as of special units and subunits.

25. The navy, in the interests of the ground forces, and in coordination with them and aviation, destroys the enemy's warships at sea with the aim of preventing them from delivering strikes against troops and other objectives situated on the coast, and his transports and landing craft with troops and combat equipment; it carries out landings from the sea, covering the troops to be landed while they are at sea, and their landing and combat operations on the shore; it lands reconnaissance parties on the enemy's coastline, delivers strikes against objectives situated on the approaches to a defended coast, carries out reconnaissance of the naval enemy in the interests of troops operating on the coast, and also carries out troop movements and the delivery and evacuation by sea of supplies [one line missing].

The navy consists of submarines, aircraft, surface vessels, and coastal missile-artillery troops, which have nuclear weapons as well as conventional ones. In addition, the navy includes services and units for special purposes.

3. The Most Important Principles of Modern Combined-Arms Combat

26. An offensive is the main form of combat operations. Only a resolute offensive, carried out at high speeds, ensures the complete rout of the enemy. Under modern conditions, especially in the initial period of a war, there will often be meeting engagements, the importance of which has become very much greater for achieving victory over the enemy.

In those cases when it is impossible or inadvisable to attack, as well as in cases when it is essential to conserve forces and means in order to support an offensive on other, more important axes, troops go over to the defense.

In connection with the high tempo and mobile nature of combat operations, the role of marches, especially long-distance ones, becomes considerably more important, and this calls for a high degree of march training of troops.

27. Constant and efficient collaboration between all forces and weapons has decisive significance in the achievement of success in modern combat.

Collaboration lies in coordinating the efforts of troops and means of destruction according to tasks, axes [2 or 3 words missing] mutual support of large units and units in the interests of the most successful fulfilment of combat tasks. Special attention is paid to coordinating nuclear strikes with the operations of the troops.

28. Under conditions of extensive use of nuclear weapons, of highly mobile and fast-moving operations by troops, of the existence of large gaps and open flanks, the importance of maneuver becomes very much greater. It is used to create the most advantageous troop grouping for a swift advance into the depth of the enemy positions, to envelop him or carry out a turning movement, and to deliver decisive and sudden strikes against his flanks and rear from different directions. The underlying principle of maneuver must be the aim to make the fullest and timely use of the results of the employment of nuclear and other weapons of destruction.

Envelopment (okhvat) is a maneuver carried out in direct tactical and fire coordination with troops attacking frontally, while a turning movement is a maneuver in greater depth carried out in tactical (operational) coordination with these troops. The most decisive results in routing the enemy can be attained by envelopment or carrying out a turning movement around both his flanks.

The maneuver plan must be simple and must be carried out rapidly and secretly and come as a surprise to the enemy. Rapidity of maneuver is achieved primarily by carrying out swift marches, by the forcing of water obstacles by tanks under water and through deep fords, and also by making use of helicopters and transport aviation for moving troops, combat equipment, ammunition, and other supplies.

Fire maneuver consists of concentrating fire with the object of hitting the enemy's most important groupings and objectives, as well as of covering the flanks of one's own troops.

29. The employment of nuclear weapons does not do away with the principle of massing forces and weapons on the most important axes.

The massing of forces and means in modern combat is achieved above all by rapid concentration of the fire efforts of troops, especially the delivery of nuclear strikes, with the aim of destroying the enemy's means of mass destruction and his main troop groupings; this enables one to change the balance of forces and means quickly to one's own advantage on a given axis or in a given sector.

The constant threat of the use of nuclear weapons by the enemy makes it necessary to get close to him quickly and to deliver swift strikes against him, and also to make the maximum use of the defensive features of the terrain. Troops must be concentrated rapidly, secretly, and only for the time required to deliver strikes against the converging axes. As soon as the necessity is over, they must be dispersed immediately so as not to present the enemy with a favorable objective for delivering a strike with weapons of mass destruction.

30. Surprise enables one to catch the enemy unawares, to cause panic in his ranks, to inflict heavy losses on him, to paralyze his morale, to undermine his combat effectiveness considerably, to disorganize control of troops, and to create favorable conditions for achieving victory even over superior enemy forces.

Surprise is achieved by misleading the enemy about one's intentions, by keeping the plan of impending operations and preparations for them secret, by using all weapons of destruction unexpectedly, by deploying from the march and delivering swift strikes where the enemy does not expect them, by following up success quickly, as well as by making use of new ways of waging combat which are unknown to the enemy and by using new means of warfare.

The enemy will also strive to achieve surprise. Consequently, it is essential to maintain a high state of vigilance, to be constantly ready for combat and be capable of taking counteraction quickly, to ensure timely detection and destruction of the enemy's sabotage and reconnaissance parties (detachments), and also to be able to provide comprehensive support for the combat operations of troops.

31. Combat operations at night are of special importance under conditions when weapons of mass destruction are used, when aircraft are highly active, and when new technical means of reconnaissance are available.

Night facilitates the preparation of combat operations in secrecy and the achievement of surprise, and enables one to carry out tasks with the smallest losses. At the same time, reduced visibility at night lowers the effectiveness of reconnaissance and complicates the use of nuclear weapons, aircraft, and other combat equipment.

Combat operations at night require a highly efficient and constant state of training of troops, comprehensive preparation, thorough planning of troop collaboration, the taking of additional protective measures when nuclear and chemical weapons are used, skilful use of all means for reconnaissance, observation, illumination, and control, especially technical ones, as well as the timely destruction and blinding of similar enemy means.

32. There must be no set pattern for the employment of forces and weapons and the ways of waging combat. Only a creative approach to the fulfilment of every combat task and the constant use of new ways and methods ensure success in combat. Combat operations carried out in accordance with the very same scheme are quickly unmasked by the enemy and enable him to take the appropriate countermeasures.

33. Success is always on the side of the one who is bold in combat, who constantly displays initiative, seizes and keeps it, and forces his will on the enemy.

Initiative lies in striving to conduct aggressive operations in the most complicated situation, in readiness to accept responsibility for a bold decision, despite any difficulties, and in finding the best ways of fulfilling the task one has been given. Even in the event of mass losses from enemy strikes, it is essential to exploit all possibilities for continuing aggressive and decisive operations. Combat operations must be conducted continuously by day and by night and in any weather. Without waiting for any special orders for this, the enemy must be attacked wherever he is detected. Delay and passivity in combat lead inevitably to defeat.

It is not the one who, in striving to destroy the enemy, fails to attain his goal that deserves blame, but the one who, fearing responsibility, has remained inactive and has not made use of all his forces and means for achieving success in combat.

34. The great mobility of troops, the mobile character of combat operations, rapid and sharp changes of the situation

in combat, and the operations of large units and units along their axes demand a high degree of training, coordination, and efficiency in the work of commanding officers and staffs. To this end, commanding officers (commanders) must assess a situation quickly and anticipate changes in it, must constantly influence the course of combat operations, must take bold decisions in time, and set combat tasks to their subordinates immediately; and they must also maintain firm control of their troops when they are on the move, making extensive use for this of technical means.

35. Correct and timely use of all available forces and means, especially nuclear weapons, requires that commanding officers and staffs should study the enemy constantly and thoroughly, and be able to divine his intentions in time and to forestall them. This is attained by the timely organization of intelligence collection, by the receipt of a continuous flow of reliable information, by skilful and rapid use of intelligence data, as well as by knowledge of the enemy's combat capabilities, organization, and tactics of operations. The main efforts of reconnaissance, especially aerial and radiotechnical reconnaissance, must be directed at the depth of the enemy's dispositions, with a view to detecting his main forces and means of nuclear attack.

36. Under modern conditions, camouflage becomes a matter of great importance. Skilful and constant application of camouflage measures facilitates the achievement of surprise and enables one to conceal the activities and dispositions of one's own troops from enemy reconnaissance, to mislead the enemy about the real grouping and intentions of one's troops, and in this way to make it more difficult for the enemy to use nuclear and other weapons of destruction.

Camouflage of troops is achieved in the following ways: by maintaining military secrecy; by skilful and dispersed disposition of troops, bases, and depots; by exploiting terrain and conditions of limited visibility; by using various camouflage devices; by taking steps for radio and radar countermeasure camouflage and for light and sound masking; by arranging dummy positions; by setting up dummy constructions and disposition areas; by carrying out misleading moves and feinting operations by troops in accordance with the army commander's instructions; by skilful execution of engineer work by personnel.

With a view to deceiving the enemy and making it more difficult for him to determine the objectives against which to use weapons of mass destruction, it is essential to change the disposition areas of troops periodically in accordance with the combat plan /one line missing/.

The state of camouflage is checked by observation from the ground and the air, by photography from aircraft (helicopters), and also by radar, by night observation devices, and other technical means.

37. Troops operate in march formation, combat formation, and precombat formation. It is essential to have a creative approach to the forming up of troops, without allowing it to fall into a pattern.

March formation is a formation of troops, consisting of columns. It must ensure the following: the carrying out of marches at high speed and of maneuvers to reach the enemy's flanks and rear; rapid deployment into precombat and combat formation; minimum vulnerability to the enemy's means of mass destruction and air strikes; conservation of personnel and vehicles; and maintenance of firm and continuous control.

Combat formation is a grouping of forces and weapons for waging combat. It must correspond to the plan of the impending combat and ensure the following: the infliction of decisive defeat on the enemy throughout the whole depth of the combat task; rapid use of the results of fire strikes against the enemy; making the best use of one's own troops in accordance with their combat characteristics; rapid maneuver of forces and means; re-formation and building up of strike forces during combat; stability and aggressiveness in defense; convenient control of troops and the maintenance of continuous collaboration; minimum vulnerability of the troops to nuclear and other weapons of destruction; rapid overcoming of zones of contamination and destruction; the best use of terrain.

Precombat formation is a grouping of forces and weapons distributed along the front and in depth with the object of maneuvering rapidly on the battlefield and deploying into correct formation, of reducing vulnerability to nuclear strikes, artillery fire, and strikes by aircraft, and of achieving advances by the troops at greater speed.

38. The rapid and sharp changes of the situation in combat, the great depth of combat tasks, the wide zones of operations, and the high speeds of advance of troops make it essential to create strong combined-arms reserves, which are designed above all to exploit success. Combat tasks are given to reserves (second echelons), usually during combat, in conformity with the specific conditions of the situation.

In the division (regiment) an antitank reserve is also created consisting of tank subunits, subunits of antitank guided missiles, and other antitank weapons, capable of rapid mobility on the battlefield and of operating on contaminated terrain. This reserve can be strengthened by subunits of engineer troops.

39. The nature of modern combat demands that troops should be supported not only by nuclear strikes, but also by powerful fire from artillery and tanks; for this purpose, when reinforcing a division with artillery and mortars it is essential to set up divisional and regimental artillery groups.

The presence in large units and units of a large [one line missing] composition for firing from concealed fire positions, enables one to reinforce artillery groups considerably with tank units and subunits which are in second echelons and reserves.

In offensive combat, artillery groups are set up usually for the period of fire preparation and fire support for the tanks and motorized infantry carrying out an offensive in the immediate depth, while in defense they are set up for carrying out counterpreparation and for repelling the enemy's attacks.

Artillery groups are especially necessary for regiments which are advancing on independent axes, as well as when they are defending fairly wide sectors.

In all cases when tanks are detailed for firing from concealed fire positions, they must be located on the axes of their impending operations and must be constantly ready to carry out combat tasks within the composition of their own units and subunits.

40. Successful conduct of combat operations requires timely material, technical, and medical support for troops in all situations.

The possibility that, during combat, troops may find themselves at a considerable distance from their supply bases, that communications routes may be destroyed, and that the delivery of supplies and evacuation may be disrupted considerably increases the demands on the working of the rear services and the requirements for timely provision of troops with material supplies.

Chapter 3

Troop Control

41. Troop control embraces all the activities of commanding officers and staffs in planning, preparing, and conducting combat operations. The character and conditions of waging modern combined-arms combat have considerably complicated the direction of troops and sharply increased the requirements in this respect.

The commanding officer bears full responsibility for the successful fulfilment of combat tasks by the troops subordinate to him. This demands that he should exercise firm, flexible, and continuous direction of all the activities of units (subunits) subordinate to him, that he should have high organizing ability, profound knowledge of the means of warfare and of the nature of modern combat, that he should display imagination and initiative widely, have a strong will and be personally brave, that he should be able to anticipate the course of events, take well-founded decisions quickly, and put them into effect with determination. Personal contact between a commanding officer and his subordinates is of prime importance.

The leading role in planning and ensuring troop control belongs to the combined-arms headquarters [one line missing] creativeness, high planning ability, and operational efficiency.

Troop control is implemented from highly mobile control points, which are provided with communications and automation equipment and which ensure uninterrupted direction of troops when the commanding officers and headquarters are at the halt, as well as when they are on the move.

42. Troop control includes the following: the maintenance of high morale and a high political standard among the troops and constant readiness on their part to carry out combat tasks; continuous and determined acquisition and study of information regarding the situation and the detection of the enemy's intentions; taking timely decisions and giving tasks to subordinates; preparing troops for combat operations and providing for their all-round support; planning and maintaining uninterrupted coordination; keeping a constant check on the fulfilment of the tasks set and providing help to the troops.

Troop control must ensure speed, secrecy of preparation, and surprise in delivering strikes against the enemy; effective employment of nuclear and other weapons of destruction, as well as skilful use of the results of their effect on the enemy; seizing and keeping the initiative; high mobility of troop operations; timely implementation of measures to protect troops against means of mass destruction and to restore their combat effectiveness.

Troop control must be continuous [one line missing].

Continuous control is achieved by the following: constant knowledge of the situation; maintenance of uninterrupted communications with subordinate and superior commanders; dispersed disposition of control points and timely changing of their locations during combat; handing over troop control when necessary from one point to another, including also to control points of subordinate units (subunits); and also by timely reporting up the chain of command and by keeping subordinates and neighboring troops informed about the situation.

Firmness of control consists of putting into effect in a decisive and determined way the decision taken for precise and complete fulfilment of the combat task.

Flexibility of control is achieved by quick reaction to changes in the situation and by timely elaboration of a decision previously made or by making a new decision. When there is no possibility of getting instructions in time from a superior commander, a commanding officer is obliged, having taken the responsibility upon himself, to make a new decision and to put it into effect with determination. At the first opportunity, he reports this to his immediate superior commander and informs neighboring troops.

44. The commanding officer of a division (regiment) controls troops personally and through his staff. He is obliged to know at all times where the troops subordinate to him are and what they are doing, their state of combat effectiveness and what they need, and also to exercise his influence on the course of combat [one line missing] forces and means, without waiting for requests from subordinate commanding officers.

In effecting troop control, the commanding officer of a division (regiment), after assessing the situation personally, is obliged to make a timely decision, to give tasks to his subordinates quickly, and to keep a watchful eye on the operations of units (subunits).

At decisive moments in combat a commanding officer must exercise his influence personally on the course of combat operations and help his troops to execute their combat tasks by paying visits (flights) to subordinates who are operating on the crucial axes.

For comprehensive assessment of the situation and making a well-founded decision, a commanding officer calls in his chief of staff, his own deputies and the officers commanding the arms of troops and services.

45. The divisional (regimental) staff is the main element which plans and ensures troop control. It must:

—organize reconnaissance and obtain information constantly and persistently by all forces and means about the composition of the enemy's grouping, its state, possible character of operations, and employment of means of mass destruction;

—always know the position and combat capabilities of its own troops, the nature of the terrain, the meteorological conditions, the radiation and chemical situation, and their influence on the execution of combat tasks;

—work out recommendations for the commanding officer [one line missing] weapons of conventional means of destruction, subordinate and supporting units (subunits);

—issue preliminary instructions to units (subunits) about impending operations, draw up combat orders and instructions, inform the troops quickly of their combat tasks, and put into effect the planning of combat operations and measures concerning the organization and maintenance of coordination;

—organize all-round support for combat operations, the protection of troops from weapons of mass destruction, radio countermeasures, security of the troops, the work of the commandant's service and traffic control;

—organize control points and communications in good time;

—keep a check on the fulfilment of combat tasks by the troops and render them assistance.

46. The chief of staff of a division (regiment) is the commanding officer's deputy and has authority to issue instructions

in his name. He bears responsibility for organizing and maintaining continuous control of troops and personally coordinates the work of all staffs, of the commanding officers of the arms of troops, of special troops, and of the commanding officer's deputies for technical matters and for the rear services.

The chief of staff must always know the situation, foresee possible changes in it and be ready to report to the commanding officer the conclusions to be drawn from it and to put forward his recommendations for a decision; he must know the suppositions and intentions of the commanding officer as well as all the instructions issued by him personally to the troops, and to see that they are carried out.

47. The commanding officer's decision forms the basis for troop control. Before making a decision, the commanding officer must clarify the task he has been given and evaluate the situation. In complete details regarding the situation do not free the commanding officer from making a decision in good time.

When clarifying the task which he has been given, the commanding officer must understand the plan of the senior commander, the procedure under which he will employ nuclear weapons and other means of destruction in support of the division (regiment), as well as the division's (regiment's) place and role in the task which is being carried out by the superior formation (large unit).

Having clarified the task, the commanding officer determines the measures which must be taken immediately in order to prepare the troops as quickly as possible to fulfil the combat task, and gives instructions to his chief of staff regarding the planning of reconnaissance and the essential preliminary orders to the troops.

48. In evaluating the situation, study is made of the following:

—the location, composition, and state of the enemy's grouping, the possible character of its operations, and of its use of nuclear weapons;

—the most important enemy objectives to be attacked with nuclear and chemical weapons and with conventional ones, and also the particular part of the grouping, the annihilation of which would sharply reduce the enemy's combat capabilities;

—the state, situation, supply position, and combat capabilities of one's own troops;

—the radiation and chemical situation;

—the nature of the terrain, the meteorological conditions, weather conditions, the time of the year and of the day or night;

—the location, the nature of the operations, and the tasks of neighboring troops.

During the study and assessment of the situation by the commanding officer of the division (regiment), the chief of staff, the commanding officer's deputies, and the officers commanding the arms of troops and services report to the commanding officer, at his request, essential details regarding matters of interest to him.

49. In his decision the commanding officer lays down:

—the plan of operations: what enemy is to be routed and in what order, the axis on which the main efforts are to be concentrated, the grouping of the division's (regiment's) forces and means and how they will maneuver;

—the objectives to be attacked by nuclear, chemical, and conventional weapons, and the order in which they are to be used;

—the combat tasks of units (subunits) and coordination between troops;

—organization of control.

The divisional (regimental) commanding officer usually makes his decision on a map. As a rule, the decision made with the aid of a map is defined more precisely on the ground during reconnaissance.

50. Combat tasks are set by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer to subordinate, attached, and supporting units (subunits) in the form of combat orders and combat instructions given in written form or orally. All orders and combat instructions given orally must be written down. Orders and instructions should be brief, but not at the expense of clarity.

In the combat order of the commanding officer of a motorized-rifle (tank) division (regiment), the following are usually laid down:

—a short evaluation of the enemy's grouping and operations;

—the division's (regiment's) combat task, the plan of operations, and the procedure for using nuclear and chemical weapons;

—the tasks of neighboring troops and the lines of demarcation with them;

—the combat tasks of motorized-rifle and tank units (subunits), with an indication of by what and by whom they will be reinforced and supported, and also their demarcation lines if these are being laid down;

—the tasks of missile troops, artillery, and tanks designated for firing from concealed firing positions;

—the tasks of antiair defense troops;

—the tasks of aviation, if it is detailed to support the division;

—the time by which the troops are to be ready;

—the place and time for the deployment of control points and the axis along which they will move.

51. During combat, combat tasks may be given in the form of separate combat instructions.

Combat instructions usually indicate the combat task of the units (subunits), what fire strikes will be delivered in its support, and the time the troops must be ready to execute the combat task.

52. When tanks are detached for firing from concealed firing positions, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer determines which tank subunits (units) are to be detailed for firing from concealed firing positions and for how long, allots them among artillery groups (if they are being formed), and lays down the quantity of ammunition to be used and the procedure for building up supplies of ammunition at the tank firing positions.

53. After the commanding officer has made his decision, the staff immediately draws it up and conveys the combat order (combat instructions) to the troops, and works out and puts into effect all the measures directed toward successful execution of the combat tasks given to the troops.

With a view to giving commanding officers and staffs advance warning of impending operations, and providing troops with as much time as possible to make preparations for them, the divisional (regimental) headquarters, acting on the basis of the commanding officer's directions, issues preliminary instructions to subordinate units and subunits even before the commanding officer has made his decision and before a combat order (combat instructions) has been drawn up.

On the basis of the decision made, and guided by the chief of staff, the commanding officer's deputies and the officers commanding the arms of troops and services plan and organize the combat employment of the units (subunits) subordinate to them and assure /one line missing/.

The measures drawn up by them are approved by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer.

Directions regarding political work, protection against weapons of mass destruction, engineer support for combat operations, organization of communications, material, technical, and medical support, as well as directions on other matters are conveyed to those who have to carry them out by means of separate instructions.

54. In controlling troops, the most important duty of the commanding officer and his staff is the organization and maintenance of continuous coordination. It is organized in the interests of the units (subunits) carrying out the main tasks and is maintained by all commanding officers and staffs throughout all combat.

As a rule, coordination is organized by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer at the time when he is setting combat tasks. Depending on the amount of time available and other factors in the situation, coordination can be worked out in greater detail on the ground, on relief or ordinary maps.

As a rule, the procedure arranged for coordination is reflected on the map on which the commanding officer has made his decision, and when time permits—in a schedule (planovaya tablitsa) of coordination.

To maintain coordination, the commanding officers and staffs of large units (units), operating in coordination, must have a correct understanding of the aim of the combat operations, of the combat tasks, and of the ways of carrying them out; they must always know the situation, have reliable means of communications between each other and a systematic [one line missing].

55. A check on the timely and accurate execution of orders and instructions by units (subunits) must be done continuously while controlling troops and must be directed toward timely prevention and elimination of shortcomings in the operations of subordinate troops and toward the accurate execution by them of the tasks which they have been given.

The best way of carrying out checks is for the commanding officer, his deputies, and officers from the staff and the services to make personal visits (flights) to the troops.

Checking must not assume the character of supervising details, nor must it substitute for the activities of commanding officers in directing the troops subordinate to them.

56. Depending on the type and character of the combat operations, control points are organized for troop control: in a division—a command post, an alternate command post, a forward command post, and a rear area control point; in a regiment—a command post and a rear area control point.

To enable the divisional (regimental) commanding officer to observe the operations of his units (subunits), observation points are organized, and they form a component part of the divisional forward command post and of the regimental command post. Observation points are manned continuously by officers from the headquarters.

All control points must be highly mobile, of small composition, and [one line missing] in all situations, especially when commanding officers and staffs are on the move.

The distances between control points must be such that they cannot be destroyed simultaneously by one nuclear burst of medium yield.

The command post (KP) is the main control point. It is set up in such a place, and during combat moves on such an

axis and at such a distance from units (subunits) of the first echelon that will ensure continuous troop control.

At the divisional command post are the following: the commanding officer, the chief of staff, the chief of the political department, the chiefs of the operational and intelligence sections, the commander of artillery, the commander of antiair defense troops (PVO), the divisional engineer, the chief of communications, the chief of the chemical service, and the necessary number of other officers.

At the regimental command post are the following: the commanding officer, the chief of staff and his deputy, the regimental commanding officer's deputy for political matters, the commander of artillery, the chief of intelligence, the chief of communications, the regimental engineer, the chief of the chemical service, as well as other officers as directed by the regimental commanding officer.

In the absence of the commanding officer, the chief of staff is in command in the command post.

The forward command post (PKP) is made up of personnel detached from the divisional command post for the control of troops during combat. It is set up in such a place and moves at such a distance from troops of the first echelon from [one line missing] combat operations, to have direct control of troops on the main axis and to exercise influence quickly on the progress of combat.

The personnel for manning the forward command post are detailed in every case by the commanding officer, depending on the situation.

The alternate command post (ZKP) is set up at the same time as the command post and is intended for assuming immediate control of troops in the event the command post is put out of action.

At it are the following: the deputy commanding officer of the division, the deputy chief of staff with some of the officers of the staff, the deputy chief of staff of artillery, the assistant chief of communication, the assistant commander of antiair defense troops with a plotting board team, some officers from the division's political department, and the essential subunits of service personnel.

The personnel of the alternate command post must always know the situation and be familiar with all the orders and instructions which have been issued to the troops.

Before assuming control of the troops, the radio equipment of the alternate command post is used for receiving.

In the event of necessity, the duties of checking the operations of troops may be given to the alternate command post.

The rear area control point (TPU) of the division (regiment) is deployed in such a place and an axis that it can exercise continuous control of rear area units and subunits.

At the rear area control point are the following: the divisional (regimental) commanding officer's deputy for rear services, together with the services subordinate to him, as well as the artillery armament service, the technical service, and sections (officers) of the staff and from the political department not included in the command post or the alternate command post.

The commanding officer's deputy for rear services is in command of the rear area control point.

57. The places where control points are deployed and the axes on which they will move are determined by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer.

When they are at the halt, control points must be deployed in a dispersed manner, in protected localities, and they must be carefully camouflaged. Radio sets and special vehicles must be located in areas which are some distance away from the control points.

In all situations control points must be in constant readiness to move quickly and in an orderly way to new areas.

As a rule, control points should move to new areas in leaps along different routes, without waiting for completion of the engineer preparation of the places where they are to stop. To select the places where control points are to stop, divisional (regimental) headquarters send forward small reconnoitering groups.

When control points are on the move, continuous radio contact with subordinate units (subunits), superior headquarters,

and with neighboring troops is maintained by radio sets operating both on the move as well as at short halts.

During combat the divisional forward command post and the regimental command post move immediately behind the combat formations of units (subunits) of the first echelon. During this, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer controls his troops either through personal contact or by means of short messages (instructions) sent by radio while he is in an armored personnel carrier or in a tank.

The divisional command post changes location in combat with the commanding officer's permission in accordance with the advance of the combat formations of troops. While it is changing location, troop control during the move must be ensured by radio communications with units (subunits), with the forward command post, and with the rear area control point.

As a rule the alternate command post moves immediately behind the divisional command post, in readiness to assume troop control.

The procedure and the time for moving the rear area control point are determined by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer's deputy for rear services.

The locations of control points are reported to the senior commander. The superior commander and his staff must see that control points do not get cut off from the troops, and must take all steps to maintain firm contact with them.

58. Communications are the main means for ensuring troop control. They are organized on the basis of the commanding officer's decision and instructions from the superior headquarters.

In a division (regiment), a communications system is set up which is based on mobile communications centers in the division (regiment) and in subordinate and coordinating units (subunits), and on communications equipment in command-staff vehicles connected with each other by radio and radiorelay channels and networks, by wire lines and by mobile means.

The responsibility for the timely organization of communications which will ensure control of subordinate and coordinating troops and their notification, is borne by the chief of staff of the division (regiment); in the case of

communications for control of the rear area--by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer's deputy for rear services.

Direct responsibility for ensuring communications is borne by the chief communications officer of the division (regiment).

59. The radio, radio-relay, wire, mobile, and signalling communications equipment used for troop control and also automatic devices, must be used in a comprehensive way and must ensure reliable, secure, and rapid transmission of combat orders and instructions and various information in all situations.

Radio is the main means of communications, capable of ensuring continuous troop control under the most difficult conditions.

All commanding officers of large units and units (chiefs of staff /four words missing/ radio sets themselves and know how to carry on a conversation by radio.

Radio relay equipment is used for communicating with the superior headquarters, between control points, for communication with the missile battalion, and in some cases with units of the division operating on the main axis.

Wire line communications equipment is used when troops are disposed at the halt, in their concentration areas, on defense, in a departure position for an offensive, as well as for providing internal communications at control points.

Mobile and signalling means of communications are used in all kinds of combat operations by troops.

Vehicles used for communications purposes must have a special recognition mark and be given priority on all roads, passes, and crossings.

60. The procedure for using communications and the working schedules of radio and radio-relay equipment are determined by the divisional commanding officer (chief of staff) who is guided by the plan of operations and instructions from superior headquarters. In this connection the following may be laid down in regard to the working schedules of radio and radio-relay equipment:

--complete prohibition on the working of radio and radio-relay sets;

--prohibition of transmissions from shortwave radio sets of strong and medium power;

--permission /one line missing/ radio sets of all power in networks for intelligence, warning, control of missile units, and antiaircraft missile weapons;

--unrestricted operation of radio and radio-relay sets.

61. Radio and radio-relay communications are provided both from the means of superior headquarters, as well as from the means of subordinate and coordinating large units (units, subunits); wire lines (channels) are laid (allotted) by the superior headquarters.

In all cases it is essential to make provision for the possibility of being able to communicate with the immediately lower echelon of command.

Communications between coordinating large units (units) are arranged on instructions from the commanding officer (headquarters) organizing the coordination.

As a rule, responsibility for establishing communications between coordinating large units (units) is entrusted in the following way:

—for communications along the front, to the troops on the right flank;

—for communications from the rear to the front, to the commanding officer (headquarters) of the large unit (unit) in the second echelon (reserve) or in the rear area;

—for communications of combined-arms large units (units) with large units (units) of arms of troops, to the commanding officers (headquarters) of large units (units) of the arms of troops;

—for communications of combined-arms large units and units with units and subunits of special troops, to the commanding officers and headquarters of combined-arms [one line missing].

Communications between a division and coordinating large units of other branches of the Armed Forces are organized through the senior commander or as directed by the superior headquarters.

If no instructions have been received regarding the organizing of communications, or in the event of loss of contact with the subordinate (coordinating) commanding officer and headquarters, the superior and subordinate (coordinating) commanding officer and headquarters must take all steps for the immediate reestablishment of communications.

62. Secure control of troops must ensure that all measures connected with the preparation and conduct of combat operations are kept strictly secret.

Secure control of troops is achieved by adherence to the rules and procedures for carrying on conversations by technical means of communications; by using secrecy devices for conversations and transmissions; by enciphering documents and by using tables of callsigns, signals, and coded maps.

With a view to achieving security in the preparation of combat operations and of surprise in striking the enemy, conversations and transmissions by technical means of communications about matters concerning the planning of combat operations by troops, as well as about preparations for the employment of nuclear weapons and other weapons of mass destruction are forbidden. As a rule, essential instructions on these matters are given by personal contact or through officers from headquarters, or, in the event of absolute necessity—in cipher or by using special apparatus.

Open use of technical means of communications for conversations and transmissions is permitted: to warn troops, and during combat when the situation is such that the use of technical means of communications with speech-secrecy devices and secure control of troops (cipher) documents [SUV] can lead to delay in the transmission of instructions and reports.

In all cases of transmission in the clear, the numbers and designations of units (subunits), the positions of commanding officers as well as the names of places, must be encoded.

Commanding officers and commanders of all ranks must take measures immediately to stop any violations of communications discipline and of the rules for secure control of troops, especially in the operation of radio.

63. In modern combat, in which extensive use is made of radiotechnical equipment, special importance attaches to radio countermeasures.

Radio countermeasures are a system of measures designed to disrupt or to disorganize the work of the enemy's radiotechnical equipment for the control of his troops and of his weapons, and also to protect one's own radiotechnical equipment against enemy jamming. It includes the detection of the enemy's

radiotechnical equipment for control purposes and of his equipment for jamming, the carrying out of radio deception, antiradar camouflage, and the use of antijamming apparatus.

Radio countermeasures in a division are put into effect in all kinds of combat operations in accordance with the plans of the commanding officer and the instructions of the superior headquarters.

Radio jamming and radio deception of the enemy is carried out with means allotted by the senior commander, on the axis on which the main efforts of the troops are concentrated, and is put into effect suddenly and in a comprehensive and massed way. Radio jamming must not hinder the work of one's own radiotechnical equipment for control and for radio communications.

The first aim of radio jamming is to neutralize the enemy's radiotechnical equipment for the control of his troops and of his weapons, breakdown in the work of which would lead to the quickest fulfilment of the combat task. They include radiotechnical equipment for the control of missile units, the main communications of command posts of divisions (brigades, battalions), control equipment of directing points for tactical aviation and radar stations in the tactical zone.

64. To ensure troop control, it is essential that commanding officers and headquarters should be provided in good time and fully with topographical and special maps of appropriate scales, as well as with initial geodetic data and other topographical documents.

In a division, topographical support is planned by the staff and put into effect by the chief of the topographical service.

Commandant's service and traffic control are planned by the headquarters with the objects of / one line missing / of the movement, concentration and disposition of troops, and also for maintaining the prescribed formation and for checking that the troops observe the measures laid down for camouflage. It is carried out on movement routes and in disposition areas, in passages through minefields and contaminated sectors, at crossings and in mountain passes, in areas where loading and unloading take place, and in the disposition areas of rear services units (subunits).

For the commandant's service and for traffic control a commandant's detail is selected consisting of personnel from traffic control subunits and from subunits of engineer troops with the necessary means of movement, communications, and road equipment. If the need arises, subunits of combat troops may be detailed for this purpose. Engineer subunits carry out commandant's service and traffic control at the same time as they prepare and maintain movement routes, crossings, passes, and passages through various kinds of obstacles.

Direct control of the commandant's service is exercised by headquarters through commandants of routes, sectors, areas, and other important objectives, as well as through officers in command of traffic control posts and commandant's posts. To designate movement routes, use is made of special signposts on which the recognition signs of large units (units) and the numbers of the routes are shown.

Chapter 3

Political Work Under Combat Conditions

66. The main source of combat strength of the Soviet Armed Forces lies in the fact that they are organized, directed, and trained by the Communist Party—the directing and guiding force of Soviet society.

Success of troops in modern combat depends to a decisive extent on their morale and on the level of political and military training of the personnel. "Where political work among troops is carried out with the greatest possible care—there, there is no slackness in the army; there, better order and spirit prevail in it; there, there are more victories" (V. I. Lenin).

67. Political work must be directed toward firm and consistent implementation of the requirements of the CPSU Program and of the Communist Party's policy in the Armed Forces, toward raising the combat effectiveness and combat readiness of troops, toward strengthening the political condition and morale, the conscious military discipline of personnel, toward able handling of combat equipment, toward raising the military [one line missing] tasks with a view of routing the enemy decisively and completely.

68. Political work is organized on the basis of the decisions of the CC CPSU and of the Soviet Government, the "Statutes Regarding the Political Organs of the Soviet Army and Navy," and of instructions approved by the CC CPSU, and also of the orders and directives of the Supreme High Command and of the directives and instructions of the Chief Political Directorate of the Soviet Army and Navy.

The content of political work among troops under various conditions of combat activity is also determined on the basis of the combat orders of commanding officers and of the special features of the situation.

69. The commanding officer of a large unit (unit) bears full responsibility for the political work in his large unit (unit), for the political condition and morale, and for the military discipline of the personnel.

The chief of the political department of a division is the divisional commanding officer's deputy for political

matters (the regimental commanding officer's deputy for political matters), and he plans and conducts political work himself and is responsible for its state to the commanding officer of the large unit (unit) and to the superior political organ.

70. All commanding officers (commanders) are obliged to take part daily in the political and military education of their subordinates, guided in their activities by Party and Komsomol /one line missing/ using their strength and influence for the successful fulfilment of the tasks facing the troops.

Constant mingling with subordinates; comprehensive and thorough study and knowledge of their political, psychological, and combat qualities, of their wants, feelings, and needs constitute a most important duty for all commanding officers (commanders) and political workers.

71. The tasks of political work under combat conditions are:

—rallying the personnel around the Communist Party and the Soviet Government; explaining to military personnel the directing and guiding role played by the Communist Party, and the most important decisions of the Party and of the Government; educating the personnel in the spirit of Socialist patriotism, utter loyalty to the cause of Communism, to their people, Motherland, the Communist Party and the Soviet Government, to their military duty and their military oath, and to their unit (large unit) standard; in the spirit of the friendship and fraternity of the peoples of the USSR, of proletarian internationalism, and of loyalty to the solidarity of all the Socialist countries.

—explaining to military personnel the reasons for, and the nature and the political aims of the war, the tasks of the Armed Forces, the international and internal position of the USSR and of the countries of the Socialist Camp, the great advantages of Socialism and Communism over the capitalist system, which has outlived its day, as well as widespread propaganda about combat successes and the advanced combat experience of our Armed Forces and of our allied troops and the feats of labor of the Soviet people and of the peoples of the Socialist countries;

--inculcation in the personnel of faith in the righteousness of our cause and in victory over the enemy, of a high offensive spirit, bravery, heroism, endurance and self-discipline, initiative and resourcefulness, honesty and truthfulness, comradeship-in-arms, mutual support and assistance in combat, the development of physical fitness and the infusion of ability to withstand all the dangers, burdens and privations of combat conditions, of readiness to give all one's efforts and, if need be, one's life for the routing of the enemy and for the defense of the Socialist Motherland;

--strengthening of one-man command, efficiency, discipline, and orderliness in troops, education of the personnel in the spirit of implicit and exact execution of the orders and instructions of commanding officers (commanders), of respect for them and constant readiness to defend them in combat, in the spirit of steadfast adherence to the requirements of military discipline and to the standards of Communist ethics and morals.

--unmasking of the reactionary essence of capitalism, its spirit which is against the people and of the aggressive policy of imperialist countries; inculcation in military personnel of a burning hatred for the opponent, for the enemies of freedom, democracy, and socialism; resolute struggle against bourgeois ideology and ethics;

--inculcation in personnel of constant and high vigilance, of a responsible attitude toward preserving military and State secrets and toward guarding their own unit (subunit) against penetration by spies and saboteurs; putting into effect measures for suppressing and exposing hostile propaganda and possible provocations on the part of the enemy;

--maintenance in the personnel of an inflexible will and determination to act in a courageous and energetic way under conditions of the employment of weapons of mass destruction by the enemy, and also to exploit in a timely skilful, and rapid way the results of the employment of these weapons by one's own troops in support of fulfilling the combat task; forestalling and decisively suppressing possible manifestations of panic among military personnel;

--explaining to personnel the combat tasks which have been set, and the methods and ways of fulfilling them, enlisting

the efforts of military personnel for the attainment of success in combat and for the exact and efficient fulfilment of the commanding officer's measures;

—devoting tireless attention to ensuring that officers really master Marxist-Leninist theory, modern military science, and military-technical knowledge, and that they develop high qualities of will power, initiative, independence, and imagination; promoting responsibility in officers for the education and training of personnel, the improvement of political work in practice, the organization and conduct of combat operations, and the successful execution of the combat tasks which have been set;

—inculcation in military personnel of faith in the power and might of their weapons, of a feeling of personal responsibility for mastering and taking care of military equipment, and for maintaining it in a constant state of combat readiness and using it skilfully in combat;

—educating the personnel in the glorious revolutionary traditions of the Communist Party and of the Soviet people, in the combat traditions of the Armed Forces, of their own arms of troops, division, and regiment, and in the heroic deeds of military personnel, in the spirit of combat comradeship with the soldiers of armies of countries of the Socialist Camp; stimulating timely interest in and seeing that military personnel, units, and subunits who have distinguished themselves in combat are recommended for decoration;

—studying the reinforcements which have come up and assisting staffs in allocating them to units and subunits; familiarizing the new reinforcements with field conditions and seeing that they are thoroughly prepared for conducting active combat operations;

—displaying concern that the personnel are continuously supplied with all the necessities for combat, and everyday life, that their welfare and cultural needs are met, that sick and wounded get timely medical help and are evacuated from the battlefield, and also that funeral arrangements are made for Soviet soldiers who have fallen while fighting for their Motherland;

—establishing and maintaining good relations between troops and the local population; seeing that national possessions and the property of workers, historic monuments, and cultural treasures in the area of the combat operations of troops are preserved.

72. A constituent part of political work under combat conditions is the ideological struggle with the enemy (special propaganda) (spetspropaganda).

The commanding officer and the political department of a large unit organize special propaganda among the hostile troops in the large unit's zone of operations with the object of demoralizing them and causing them to desert and to surrender. For this purpose measures are planned and put into effect for the political study of the enemy and for carrying on special propaganda among his troops and population by means of sound broadcasting equipment and radio sets, by distributing leaflets, by organizing the return of prisoners-of-war with propaganda tasks, as well as by using other forms and methods of ideological warfare.

Special propaganda measures must be put into effect in order to fulfil combat tasks in coordination with neighboring large units and with large units of the armies of countries of the Socialist Camp which are carrying out joint combat operations, the successes of our troops in combat and, above all, the results of the employment of weapons of mass destruction being exploited to the maximum extent in this connection.

73. Political work among troops engaged in combat under various conditions has the following aim:

—when troops are on the move—ensuring that every effort is made by personnel to maintain march discipline; timely, orderly, and concealed arrival in the appointed area in full combat readiness;

—in a meeting engagement—maintenance of constant readiness on the part of personnel for immediate deployment into battle formation and for rapid maneuvering on the battlefield, as well as the retention of ability to deliver a surprise strike against the enemy by determined, enterprising, and decisive action and to rout him in a short time.

—in an offensive—to instil a high offensive spirit in enlisted men, NCOs, and officers; to develop steadfastness and fearlessness in them; ability to overcome skilfully and quickly zones of contamination and devastated areas, obstructions, and obstacles; and also an unwavering determination to rout the enemy completely by aggressive, continuous, and resolute action;

—in defense—maintenance in personnel of a high degree of combat aggressiveness, steadiness, and stubbornness, as well as readiness to counterattack and to go over to a decisive offensive; ensuring that every effort is made by enlisted men, NCOs, and officers to organize good quality engineer work in time in areas and positions, and that a defense capable of successfully withstanding massed strikes from the ground and air enemy is set up in a short space of time;

—during combat when surrounded, in breaking out of encirclement, and also when withdrawing—ensuring that every effort is made by military personnel to display endurance, steadfastness, discipline, and vigilance; not to allow manifestations of panic or doubts about the possibility of carrying out the combat tasks that have been set.

74. The special tasks of political work in intelligence units and subunits are: inculcation in fighting men of courage, resoluteness, and boldness in action, of initiative, endurance, and enterprise, of military cunning, honesty, and truthfulness, alertness and vigilance, and ability to keep State and military secrets; ensuring that every effort is made by personnel to detect fully and in time what the enemy's intentions are, and the nature and grouping of his forces, expecially of his nuclear attack weapons.

75. The special tasks of political work among airborne forces are: ensuring that every effort is made by the troops to act in a skilful, resolute, and bold way when executing combat tasks in the enemy's rear; raising the feeling of responsibility in personnel for exact compliance with the regulations and rules when packing parachutes and when preparing arms and combat equipment for dropping, for seeing that ammunition, fuel, and other supplies are expended in a sensible and economic way, and that the arms and equipment captured from the enemy are used in the best way in the interests of combat.

76. The special tasks of political work among missile troops are:

—maintenance of constant readiness in enlisted men, NCOs, and officers to carry out the tasks of delivering timely and accurate strikes against designated enemy objectives in all situations;

—increasing in every respect the feeling of responsibility in commanding officers and staffs for the timely and accurate preparation of data for firing, for launching missiles in the shortest possible time, and strictly against the prescribed target (objective), as well as for skilful and firm control of units and subunits in combat;

—ensuring that every effort is made by personnel to prepare launchers and missiles thoroughly for launching in a very short space of time, and to adhere strictly to the requirements of manuals and instructions for the handling of combat equipment;

—developing in personnel the qualities of independence, speed, efficiency, and accuracy when preparing and carrying out each missile launching, of a determination to achieve interchangeability of crew numbers and a capability to carry out the work successfully with reduced crews.

77. The special tasks of political work among antiair defense troops are:

—in antiaircraft missile (artillery) units—ensuring that every effort is made by military personnel to prepare combat systems rapidly and efficiently for fulfilling combat tasks, to carry out timely inspection, arming, and delivery of antiaircraft missiles (ammunition) to firing subunits, and to ensure that all personnel take orderly and resolute action to destroy high-flying, low-flying, pilotless, and other enemy air targets;

—in radiotechnical units—raising the feeling of responsibility in personnel for the detection of all enemy air targets at maximum ranges, for ensuring that they are firmly tracked and that accurate details about them are reported in time to command posts.

Special attention must be paid in political work to seeing that personnel achieve quick and thorough mastery of

new combat weapons a[illegible]at, and improve their skill and methods of using them [illegible]t.

78. The successful accomplishment of the tasks of political work among troops under combat conditions is achieved by:

—timely setting of tasks for political work by commanding officers (commanders) and superior political organs both when planning combat as well as during combat operations; constant and energetic organizational work on the part of commanding officers (commanders), political organs, party, and Komsomol organizations among the mass of military personnel;

—correct outlining of the forms and methods of Party-political work; by correlating them skilfully and applying them in a creative way in conformity with the situation, with the combat tasks which are being fulfilled, and with the special features of the operations of troops on the battlefield;

—instructing commanding officers, staff officers, political workers, and the Party and Komsomol aktivs about the content, forms, and methods of Party-political work under various combat conditions and about political-education work with personnel;

—continuous and thorough knowledge on the part of the political apparatus of the military situation, the decisions made by the commanding officer and the combat orders issued to troops [one line missing]7;

—maintenance of uninterrupted contact between the political department (political apparatus of the unit) and headquarters, and keeping each other informed;

—correct distribution of Communists; timely replacement of Party-political workers who have become casualties, strengthening of Party and Komsomol organizations and all-round intensification of their activities and combat spirit; extensive use of the Party and Komsomol aktivs and of army welfare bodies in accomplishing the tasks of political work; and ensuring that Communists and Komsomol members set an example in combat;

—display of personal courage and bravery in combat by commanding officers (commanders) and political workers and the daily exercising of influence by them on their subordinates;

—timely and continuous flow of truthful political information from bottom to top and top to bottom.

Political work must be carried on continuously and purposefully, and the more complicated and intense the combat situation, the more active political work should be.

79. On the basis of the task set and of the combat orders of the large unit (unit) and guided by the actual situation, the political department of the division (the regimental commanding officer's deputy for political matters) draws up a plan for political work during the period of preparation for and conduct of combat operations.

The plan of political work is approved by the commanding officer [one line missing].

80. The chief of the political department of the large unit (the regimental commanding officer's deputy for political matters) determines his place in combat in the light of the situation and the tasks of the troops; the officers directly subordinate to him act in accordance with his instructions.

Chapter 4

Intelligence

81. Combat intelligence collection is the most important form of support for the combat operations of troops. It is conducted by all arms of troops, special troops, and services with extensive use of technical means.

The nature of modern combat and the employment of nuclear and other weapons of mass destruction have greatly raised the role and significance of intelligence and have placed greater demands on it.

Intelligence collection is conducted in all situations, actively and continuously, at great depth, in advance of the front line, in the enemy's rear, and on the flanks of large units (units). The main efforts of collection are concentrated in the first place on the timely detection of the enemy's nuclear weapons and of his main grouping of troops.

For making a well-founded decision and for the successful conduct of combat operations, all commanding officers and staffs must plan intelligence collection in time and make strenuous efforts to acquire authentic information about the enemy, the terrain, the weather, the political sentiments of the local population [one line missing] epidemic conditions in the area of the combat operations of the troops.

82. The main demands placed on intelligence are: continuity, timeliness, and authenticity.

Continuity of intelligence lies in conducting reconnaissance in all kinds of combat operations of troops, by day and by night, in all types of terrain, and in all weather.

To achieve continuity of intelligence it is necessary to combine the efforts of all forms of reconnaissance, coordinating these efforts in regard to timing and targets, and supplementing one form of reconnaissance by another.

Reconnaissance must not cease without an order to this effect from the commanding officer (commander) who has set the reconnaissance task. It is only with his knowledge that units and subunits (groups) engaged in reconnaissance may be relieved.

Timeliness of intelligence lies in obtaining intelligence data by a definite time in order that troops and headquarters should have advance information about the enemy, and in order that his operations should not come as a surprise to them, thereby ensuring that the commanding officer has the opportunity to make a timely decision and anticipate the nature of impending operations.

Authenticity is achieved by obtaining the fullest intelligence data by last-minute reconnaissance, by rechecking and thoroughly analyzing these data, obtained at different times and from various sources, with a view to discovering in time the measures taken by the enemy to mislead and deceive, and also with a view to identifying and distinguishing between his real objectives (aims) and the false ones.

83. Reconnaissance must establish the enemy's location, his forces, their composition and grouping, and especially the availability and location of nuclear and other weapons of mass destruction; it must determine the enemy's combat effectiveness, the nature of his operations and intentions and of his measures to protect troops against weapons of mass destruction; it must discover the disposition of his fire weapons, and the nature and system of his defense and obstacles; it must establish the location of control points and of radar stations, discover the system of antiair defense, and determine the zones of radioactive, chemical, and bacteriological contamination.

Intelligence data regarding the location of the enemy's nuclear weapons and other important targets of small dimension must be distinguished by great accuracy.

Continuous observation is set up and maintained on enemy nuclear attack weapons that have been detected until the moment of their destruction.

If it is essential to get confirmation of the presence of a reconnoitered objective in its previous

area or to determine its coordinates before delivering a nuclear strike against it, last-minute reconnaissance is carried out. For last-minute reconnaissance, use is made of the most effective forces and means which give quick results.

84. Reconnaissance of terrain is carried out with a view to establishing the character and special features /one word missing/ natural obstacles and local objects, the condition of the soil and of the roads and the extent to which the terrain will have an influence on the dispositions and operations of one's own troops and of the enemy's troops, and especially on the employment of nuclear and other weapons of mass destruction and on protection against them.

85. Information regarding weather conditions and expected changes in the weather in the area of combat operations is obtained by the meteorological service; this information is taken into account by the commanding officer when he makes his decision for the employment of his troops and of nuclear weapons and when determining the direction in which air contaminated by radioactive, chemical, and bacteriological substances will move.

86. The planning of reconnaissance is a priority duty of all commanding officers and staffs.

Reconnaissance tasks are set by the commanding officer of a large unit (unit). He determines what information it is essential to obtain and by what time; where and on the accomplishment of what tasks the main efforts of reconnaissance should be concentrated; what forces and means should be employed to fulfil the reconnaissance tasks.

The direct organizer of reconnaissance in a large unit (unit) is the combined-arms staff. In organizing reconnaissance, the staff draws up the plans for reconnaissance, passes the tasks to those who will carry them out, organizes the preparation and dispatch of subunits for reconnaissance and communications with them, checks that reconnaissance tasks are being carried out, and organizes the receipt and processing of the intelligence obtained.

87. In a large unit (unit), reconnaissance is organized and conducted in accordance with the nature

of the troop operations. When a new combat task is given, reconnaissance is organized immediately, and the forces and means engaged in conducting reconnaissance are given new targets for the fulfilment of reconnaissance tasks in support of the large unit's (unit's) impending operations.

88. The depth to which reconnaissance is conducted by a division (regiment) depends on the nature of the task and the kind of combat operations in which the troops are involved; and it must ensure the detection of enemy objectives, for the employment of all combat weapons against them at the maximum range, and provide opportunities for timely anticipation of the course that combat operations will take.

89. Combat intelligence collection is conducted by reconnaissance subunits of combined-arms large units and units, and by the forces and means of air, depth, radio, radiotechnical, radar, missile-artillery, engineer, radiation, and chemical reconnaissance.

Intelligence collection tasks are also carried out in support of ground forces by clandestine agents, and on coastal axes by naval reconnaissance.

90. To conduct reconnaissance in advance of the front line, on the flanks, and in the depth of the enemy's battle formation, a division (regiment) dispatches reconnaissance groups at a strength of a reinforced platoon (3 to 6 armored personnel carriers and tanks, and also motorcycles) and reconnaissance detachments at a strength of a reinforced rifle (tank, reconnaissance) company up to that of a reinforced motorized rifle (tank) battalion.

From a motorized rifle (tank) battalion, a reconnaissance detachment and security subunits, reconnaissance patrols are sent out at a strength of from a squad up to a platoon.

To conduct reconnaissance, a reconnaissance group is given an axis and an objective, while a reconnaissance detachment is given a zone or an axis.

The distance separating the reconnaissance group (reconnaissance detachment) from the main forces is determined by the task, and depends on the nature of the combat operations, the composition of the subunits and nature of the terrain. It can be: for a reconnaissance group and a reconnaissance detachment dispatched by a division—up to 100 km, and by a regiment—up to 50 km.

When a task is given to a reconnaissance group (reconnaissance detachment), the following are provided:

—information about the enemy;

—the composition of the reconnaissance group (reconnaissance detachment);

—the reconnaissance task;

—the departure point and the time when it should be passed;

—the time by which reconnaissance is to be completed and where contact with one's own troops should take place;

—the procedure for maintaining communications and for reporting the intelligence obtained, as well as for receiving intelligence data from airborne reconnaissance aircraft.

If necessary, the axes on which adjacent subunits engaged in reconnaissance are operating may be given.

In carrying out reconnaissance tasks involving passage through the front line of one's own troops, the procedure for this, a password, and a response are also given.

91. Aerial reconnaissance in support of large units and units of ground forces is conducted by manned and unmanned reconnaissance aircraft from reconnaissance aviation and from aviation operating in support of the large unit, and by helicopters.

Aerial reconnaissance is conducted by visual observation, by aerial photography, and with the help of radiotechnical and television equipment. It detects enemy troops in their disposition areas and on the move, the presence and location of means of nuclear attack, the firing positions of artillery, the system of engineer preparations, and also determines where the enemy's command posts, radar stations, and rear area installations are situated.

Reconnaissance tasks for aircraft are set by the commanding officer of a large unit through the aviation representative.

The intelligence data obtained by aerial reconnaissance must be reported immediately to commanding officers and headquarters of combined-arms large units and units.

The combined-arms staff makes arrangements for the continuous receipt of aerial reconnaissance information sent by the crews of reconnaissance and supporting aircraft while airborne.

92. Deep reconnaissance is conducted in the enemy's rear area by specially selected and trained groups with the object of detecting his nuclear weapons and other weapons of mass destruction, his troops in their concentration areas and when on the move, his control points, and his radiotechnical means.

The dispatch of deep reconnaissance groups into the enemy's rear area is carried out by methods and means which will ensure that they are able to reach the intended reconnaissance area quickly and undetected. For the dispatch of depth reconnaissance groups, use is made in the first place of aircraft and helicopters. The depth to which they are infiltrated is determined by the combat task of the large unit, and may reach 100 km or more.

For each deep reconnaissance group infiltrated into the enemy's rear area, the following are laid down: its composition, task and the time by which it is to be completed, the area (objective) to be reconnoitered, and the way and time when the party is to be infiltrated into the enemy's rear area are also fixed.

Deep reconnaissance groups are provided with communications equipment which will ensure reliable communications at the required ranges.

93. Radio reconnaissance is conducted with the object of obtaining information about the enemy by detecting, intercepting, and D/F'ing his radio, radio-relay, and facsimile television communications.

Radiotechnical reconnaissance obtains information about the enemy by searching for, intercepting, and

taking cross bearings on his means of radio remote control, radar, and radionavigation [portion missing].

From the information provided by radio and radiotechnical reconnaissance, it is possible to determine the grouping, composition, subordination, nature of operations, and intentions of the enemy's troops.

Furthermore, radiotechnical reconnaissance uncovers the enemy's system of radiotechnical support and determines the location and parameters of his radiotechnical means.

In planning radio and radiotechnical reconnaissance, the following are laid down: the reconnaissance tasks and the times by which they must be completed; the areas (positions) for the deployment of subunits; the procedure for changing their location during combat; the procedure for coordination with neighboring radio and radiotechnical reconnaissance units (subunits) and with radio countermeasure units (subunits).

94. Radar reconnaissance obtains information regarding the enemy's air, ground, and surface targets and determines their composition, nature, and location. It is conducted by radar stations (posts).

95. Missile-artillery reconnaissance is conducted by spotter-reconnaissance aircraft and by ground radiotechnical, radar, electronic-optical, and sound-ranging equipment.

Spotter-reconnaissance aviation and helicopters carry out reconnaissance of the enemy's disposition areas and his fire weapons by visual observation, by photography, and by means of radiotechnical equipment.

The main tasks of missile-artillery [one line missing]:

—detection of the enemy, his nuclear weapons, tanks, artillery, and other important objectives, and also determination of their coordinates;

—carrying out last minute reconnaissance of objectives (targets) earmarked for attack by nuclear weapons;

—servicing the firing of missile and artillery units and subunits;

—checking the results of nuclear missile strikes and of artillery fire.

96. Engineer reconnaissance is conducted by the forces and means of reconnaissance subunits of engineer troops and by combat engineer scouts, included in the composition of subunits sent forward by combined-arms headquarters for the purpose of determining the nature and extent of preparation of positions and disposition areas of the enemy's troops; for discovering the places and nature of destruction after the delivery of nuclear strikes; for determining the camouflage and protective features of the terrain, the ease with which it can be crossed by vehicles and the condition of the road network; for studying the nature of water obstacles and the possibilities of forcing them from the march, and for discovering the whereabouts and condition of sources of water supply.

97. Radiation, chemical, and bacteriological reconnaissance is conducted with the object of providing the commanding officer in time with essential information regarding contamination of the terrain and the air by radioactive and toxic substances, as well as bacteriological ones.

It is conducted by reconnaissance and security subunits and by specially trained squads (crews, teams) of all arms of troops and special troops.

The determination of the boundaries, type, and extent of contamination and searching for detours around contaminated zones and for axes with the lowest radiation levels, are carried out by radiation and chemical reconnaissance subunits.

98. Naval reconnaissance in support of large units and units of the ground forces is organized and conducted by aircraft, surface warships, submarines, and by units and subunits of coastal missile-artillery troops.

99. Observation of the enemy is organized in all the various kinds of combat operations by troops and is

conducted continuously from all observation and forward command posts, as well as from observation points, which, in all cases, are provided with the necessary equipment for communications and movement. Observation is also carried out from helicopters operating within the disposition areas of one's own troops. When conducting observation at night, use is made of devices for night vision and of equipment for illuminating the ground.

In a large unit (unit), the system of observation is planned in such a way that it will ensure the closest watch on the enemy and the whole area covered by the combat operations.

In planning a system of observation, the staff of a large unit (unit) must set tasks in good time for carrying out reconnaissance by observation, must provide for reliable communications with observation points, and organize the collection and processing of intelligence data.

100. Raids and ambushes are carried out on the orders of commanding officers of large units and units with the object of capturing prisoners and seizing documents and samples of the enemy's armament and combat equipment.

101. Reconnaissance in force may be undertaken with the object of checking or making more accurate information regarding the enemy or of obtaining such information, if it is impossible to obtain it by other means. As a rule, reconnaissance in force is undertaken on the decision of the army commander (corps commanding officer).

For carrying out reconnaissance in force, motorized-rifle and tank subunits are detached and, as a rule, are reinforced by combat engineers and chemical personnel. The operations of these subunits are supported by artillery, and in some cases by aircraft.

102. Prisoners and deserters are one of the sources from which intelligence data about the enemy are obtained. Consequently, the systematic capture of prisoners is one of the constant tasks of all subunits and units engaged in combat or reconnaissance of the enemy.

Prisoners and deserters are interrogated in the first place in the subunit (unit) in whose sector they have been captured.

Information regarding the enemy, the terrain, and the conditions in the area of combat operations can also be obtained by questioning local inhabitants.

103. All information about the enemy obtained by reconnaissance, must be reported in good time to the combined-arms headquarters of the large unit (unit). The intelligence data which flow into headquarters are studied, processed, reported to the commanding officer of the large unit (unit) and to the superior headquarters and passed to subordinate coordinating [three words missing]

Chapter 5

Protection of Troops Against Weapons of Mass Destruction

104. Protection of troops against weapons of mass destruction is organized with the object of ensuring that personnel, combat equipment, and materiel sustain the minimum losses from the effects of nuclear, chemical, and bacteriological weapons, and that troops retain their combat effectiveness.

It includes:

—dispersal and periodical changing of the disposition areas of troops;

—camouflage of troops and use of the protective features of the terrain;

—selecting the most advisable ways of crossing contaminated zones and ensuring the protection of personnel in protracted operations on contaminated ground;

—preparation of routes for the movement of troops and engineer work in areas occupied by troops;

—radiation, chemical, and bacteriological reconnaissance and the notification of troops of radioactive, chemical, and bacteriological contamination;

—checking whether personnel have been exposed to irradiation;

—carrying out sanitary-hygienic and prophylactic measures;

—ensuring that the troops are provided with protective means and make timely use of it.

After the enemy has used weapons of mass destruction, elimination of the effects of such weapons takes place.

In organizing protection against weapons of mass destruction, the actual and expected meteorological conditions are taken into account.

105. In making a decision, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer determines the most important measures to be taken to protect units (subunits) against weapons of mass destruction. Depending on the situation, he gives instructions for the organizing of reconnaissance and observation of nuclear bursts and the spread of clouds of radioactive and chemical contamination, lays down the procedure for dispersing troops and changing their disposition areas, the ways in which contaminated zones are to be crossed, as well as the ways in which the protective features of the terrain are to be exploited and the nature of the engineer work to be done on it. After the employment of weapons of mass destruction by the enemy, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer determines the procedure and time period for eliminating the consequences, and the forces and means which are to be detailed for this purpose.

On the basis of the commanding officer's decision, divisional (regimental) headquarters, together with the officers commanding the arms of troops and services, organize the measures to be taken to protect units and subunits against weapons of mass destruction [two words missing] the consequences of their use and see that they are put into effect.

106. Dispersal of units (subunits) is carried out in conformity with the tasks to be fulfilled and with the nature of the terrain.

Periodical changing of the disposition areas of troops is effected in accordance with a plan drawn up in advance and must be carried out secretly and quickly, without adverse effects on the execution of the combat task.

107. Camouflage must deprive enemy reconnaissance of the possibility of obtaining timely information about our troops. It is expecially important that the combat formations of missile units (subunits) and control points should be thoroughly camouflaged. The camouflage must be effective against all types and means of enemy reconnaissance, especially against aerial reconnaissance and radar.

Skilful use of the protective features of terrain provides possibilities for considerably reducing the losses

sustained by troops from weapons of mass destruction. In all cases, natural cover must be made use of to protect troops. The best conditions to protect troops against nuclear weapons are provided by terrain broken by ravines, gorges, and large tracts of forest. In this connection, it is necessary to bear in mind that obstructions may be created, that fires may break out, and that vapors of toxic substances may lie stagnant on the ground, and bacterial agents may lie about in woods, ravines, and hollows.

108. The ways of crossing contaminated zones and the procedure for operations of troops in them [two or three words missing] of the task to be fulfilled, the nature of the enemy's operations, the radiation, chemical, and bacteriological situation, the state and location of the division's units, and the features of the terrain. In all cases they must ensure fulfilment of the combat task at high speed and minimum exposure of personnel to radiation.

Reconnaissance of contaminated zones is organized in good time with the object of determining the nature and boundaries of contamination, and also the axes with the lowest radiation levels.

Contaminated zones are crossed at maximum speed, as a rule, in marching order along axes which ensure minimum exposure of personnel to radiation. Personnel put on personal means of protection, hatches of combat vehicles are closed, and supplies are covered.

If they come under enemy fire, units (subunits) operate in a contaminated zone in approach march formation (predboyevoy poryadok) or combat formation.

When the situation does not call for immediate crossing of a contaminated zone, it is crossed after radiation falls to a level at which the troops will not be exposed to any considerable irradiation.

If necessary, separate subunits of a division (regiment) may be lifted across a contaminated zone by helicopter.

109. In cases where the situation compels troops to carry on combat operations in a contaminated zone for a considerable time, the protection of personnel [two

words missing 7 by making use of personal means of protection and of the protective attributes of combat equipment and transport, by timely relief of subunits, by making proper arrangements for rest and for taking nourishment, and also by making use of engineer structures.

Relief of units (subunits) is undertaken:

—in order to rest units (subunits) after their personnel have remained in personal means of protection for a considerable time;

—with the object of precluding the personnel of units (subunits) being put out of action as a result of irradiation.

110. To ensure troop movement carried out with the object of protecting them against the effects of nuclear weapons, movement routes for troops are prepared, and alternate and lateral routes are selected and made ready.

When time permits, the following are arranged to protect against the effects of nuclear weapons: for personnel—trenches, slit trenches, blindages, shelters, and other cover; for combat equipment—trenches, and other cover of dugout type.

Shelters must be fitted out in a special way in order to ensure that personnel can remain in them without personal means of protection when the air is contaminated by radioactive, toxic, and bacteriological substances.

The special fitting out of shelters (sealing them hermetically and installing filtering and ventilating

[one line and the whole of the next page missing]

notification of troops of radioactive, chemical, and bacteriological contamination is organized by divisional (regimental) headquarters, for which purpose a single and permanent signal is fixed. Notification is implemented by commanding officers of units and subunits on the basis

of information from radiation, chemical, and bacteriological reconnaissance. Transmission of the signal by communications means is given top priority.

Divisional (regimental) headquarters keep units (subunits) systematically informed about the possibilities of contamination, as well as about the existence of areas contaminated by radioactive, toxic, and bacteriological substances in the zone (area) of their operations.

113. Checking the personnel for irradiation in order to assess the division's (regiment's) combat effectiveness is organized by the chief of the chemical service. Dosimetric readings are taken in subunits after each nuclear burst and after being on contaminated terrain. When troops are on contaminated terrain for a long time, the intervals at which dosimetric readings are taken are fixed by the chief of the regimental service. All commanding officers and headquarters keep a record of the doses of irradiation.

114. Sanitary-hygienic and prophylactic measures include the maintenance of sanitary conditions in the areas occupied by units (subunits) and strict adherence by personnel to the rules of personal cleanliness and of the use of food and water. The medical service organizes the protective inoculation of personnel and the application of antiradiation preparations and antibiotics.

115. Timely and skilful use of personal means of protection ensures reliable protection of personnel against toxic, radioactive, and bacteriological substances.

Commanding officers of units must take steps constantly to ensure that personnel are fully provided with means of protection. Checking of the technical state of protective equipment is organized by divisional (regimental) headquarters, and implemented by the chief of the chemical service.

116. Elimination of the consequences of the employment of weapons of mass destruction by the enemy is undertaken with the object of restoring the combat effectiveness of units (subunits) rapidly and creating conditions for the successful fulfilment of the tasks which they have been given.

It includes:

—reestablishment of the broken combat formation and of the combat readiness of units (subunits);

—rescue work and medical and evacuation measures;

—clearing and reestablishing movement routes for troops, restoring or arranging new shelters and obstacles, as well as the extinguishing of fires which threaten the safety of personnel or equipment or interfere with the movement of troops;

—special treatment of troops;

—purifying water of radioactive, toxic and bacteriological substances and disinfection of food;

—isolation and restrictive measures, quarantining of troops, and combating pathogenic organisms at centers of bacteriological contamination.

117. Units and subunits which have suffered nuclear and chemical strikes, while continuing to fulfil their combat task, evacuate affected personnel by means of specially detailed teams, use their own forces and means for preliminary special treatment of personnel, armament, and combat equipment, restore if necessary demolished fieldworks, and also replenish their stocks of arms and supplies.

Units (subunits) which have lost their combat effectiveness may be relieved or withdrawn from combat for reorganization only on instructions from the divisional (regimental) commanding officer, who determines the time, the axis of withdrawal, and the areas where they will concentrate.

In units (subunits) which have lost their combat effectiveness, the elimination of the consequences of nuclear and chemical strikes is undertaken by special detachments consisting of motorized-rifle, chemical, and engineer subunits, as well as of subunits of the medical and tank-technical services. The functions of these detachments include rendering of medical assistance,

conducting radiation and chemical reconnaissance, evacuation of injured personnel, clearing up wreckage, extinguishing fires, arranging evacuation routes, removal of combat equipment and motor and tractor vehicles from areas of strikes and providing full special treatment for troops.

118. Medical and evacuation measures are carried out with the object of preventing and reducing the lethal effects of weapons of mass destruction on personnel by organizing self and mutual help, by rendering medical assistance to the prescribed extent, and, if necessary, by the rapid evacuation of injured personnel to medical establishments. In the event of personnel being affected on a mass scale, the division(regiment) may be reinforced with medical and evacuation means drawn from the army (division), or these measures may be carried out by army personnel.

119. The special treatment of troops is organized by divisional (regimental) headquarters with the help of the chief of the chemical service.. It comprises medical treatment of personnel, decontamination, degassing, and disinfection of armament and equipment. Special treatment is divided into partial and full treatment.

Partial special treatment is carried out on the spot while troops are in combat formations, without their ceasing to carry out the combat task. It is organized with the permission of the regimental commanding officer by the commanding officers of subunits and is carried out by the personnel themselves, who make use of standard means, and in cases where personnel are affected by toxic substances, partial medical treatment is carried out immediately after they have been contaminated.

Full special treatment is carried out with the permission of the divisional commanding officer after the fulfilment of the tasks that have been set, on the spot in subunits or at special treatment points, by the division's (regiment's) chemical protection subunits and by units of supporting chemical troops, under the direct guidance of the chief of tho chemical service.

For the replacement of contaminated uniforms, underwear, footwear, and equipment during the modical treatment of personnel, the prescribed replacement

stocks of all outfits must be constantly maintained in units and large units, as well as in units of chemical troops and at medical points.

120. When the enemy makes use of contaminated insects, ticks, and other carriers of disease, disinfection of defensive structures, buildings, and, if necessary, of underwear and uniforms is carried out by personnel of subunits under the guidance of the medical service. To exterminate insects and ticks over large expanses of ground, use is made of special units and aircraft fitted out for this purpose.

121. Full decontamination, degassing, and disinfection of materiel (supplies of all kinds) are carried out at special treatment points which are set up by units (subunits) of the chemical troops directly in rear area units and subunits. Full degassing of uniforms, underwear, footwear, and equipment is carried out at degassing points which are set up by subunits of chemical troops in the disposition areas of rear units.

122. Foodstuffs which have been contaminated by radioactive, toxic, and bacteriological substances are subjected to laboratory testing.

If contaminated over the acceptable level, foodstuffs undergo special treatment. Foodstuffs packed in hermetic containers are used as issued after the containers have been decontaminated, degassed, and disinfected. Foodstuffs which have not been packed in hermetic containers, after receiving special treatment and the carrying out of a check that complete disinfection has been achieved, are used subject to the advice of the medical service. Prepared food and bread which has been exposed to contamination is destroyed.

123. Water contaminated by radioactive, toxic, and bacteriological substances, which is essential to meet the needs of the troops, is purified by subunits of engineer troops with the help of special means for purifying water. The use of water for drinking and for cooking is permitted after checks have been carried out that it has been fully decontaminated, subject to the advice of the medical service.

124. Isolation and restrictive measures are organized with the object of precluding contact between troops which have been exposed to bacteriological contamination and other units (subunits) and the local population.

Quarantine is imposed and lifted on instructions from the army commander, who also lays down the procedure for making use of quarantined troops.

The implementation of measures connected with the introduction of essential restrictions (observation) or of quarantine and checking that they are put into effect are organized by the divisional (regimental) headquarters with the assistance of the chief of the medical service.

Chapter 6

Antiair Defense

125. Antiair defense is one of the ways in which troops carry out combat operations. It is organized by all commanding officers in all situations and is carried out with the object of inflicting decisive defeat on the air enemy, providing reliable cover for troops, and creating the most favorable conditions for the achievement of success in combat.

The antiair defense of a division is part of the overall system of antiair defense of an army (front).

126. The main tasks of the antiair defense of troops are:

—timely detection of the air enemy and notifying troops about him;

—destruction of the air enemy with the object of repelling his strikes against troops and objectives in the rear area and preventing him from conducting aerial reconnaissance;

—neutralization by radio jamming of the enemy's radioelectronic systems for guiding aircraft and for bombing;

—combating the enemy's airborne forces while they are being transported by air and while they are being dropped.

Antiair defense includes combat actions by antiaircraft missile units, antiaircraft artillery, fighter aircraft, and radiotechnical units.

To a considerable extent, success in the antiair defense of troops is made possible by the destruction and neutralization, by means of strikes by missile troops and aircraft and by artillery fire, of the enemy's missile weapons, his aircraft on airfields, his aircraft carriers, and also his radiotechnical equipment for controlling and guiding missiles and aircraft.

To reduce the effectiveness of strikes by the air enemy, troops must make extensive use of dispersal, of engineer preparation of terrain and camouflage, and of organized small arms fire against low-flying targets.

127. Antiaircraft missile units (subunits) are capable of destroying with great effectiveness enemy manned and unmanned air attack weapons at low (up to 600 m), medium (up to 8,000 m), and high (up to 14,000 m) altitudes and in the stratosphere in any weather conditions and at any time of the year or day or night.

As a rule, antiaircraft missile units (subunits) are employed under centralized control.

Antiaircraft artillery constitutes the main means for providing direct cover for troops and targets in the rear area. It is capable of destroying the enemy in the air at low and medium altitudes.

Antiaircraft subunits on self-propelled mounts cover troops in combat (approach march) formations, or when they are in march columns, firing from the march, or when at the halt for short periods.

Fighter aviation constitutes the most mobile means of antiair defense. It is capable of destroying enemy manned and unmanned means of air attack and is employed in accordance with a plan drawn up by the front, primarily for providing cover for troops and objectives which are not covered by antiaircraft missile units (subunits).

Radiotechnical antiair defense units are intended for conducting reconnaissance of the air enemy and for the notification of troops about him. They must ensure complete coverage of a radar field with the object of detecting all air targets and keeping a continuous watch on their flights.

Radio countermeasure units of antiair defense are intended for the neutralization by offensive jamming of the enemy's airborne radar in aircraft and unmanned means, of his close-range navigational and bombing systems, and also of the radio communications used to control the enemy's tactical aviation. As a rule, these units are employed under central control to cover troop groupings and also to cover targets having radar contrast.

128. Antiair defense is set up on the basis of providing zonal or direct cover for troops and objectives.

Zonal antiair defense consists of organizing [three words missing] system of combat operations by antiaircraft missile units, which are grouped in such a way that they can at the same time provide reliable and complete coverage by fire on a wide front and in great depth for troops (objectives) in combat formations against strikes from the air enemy. It is set up in conformity with the maximum horizontal and vertical ranges of antiaircraft missiles, and can be reinforced by fighter aviation and by radio countermeasure units.

In the zonal antiair defense system, fighter aviation destroys the air enemy independently in the approaches, on the flanks, and beyond the operational zone of antiaircraft missile units; and when operations of fighters and antiaircraft missile units are coordinated in regard to targets, altitudes, and time, they destroy the air enemy within the boundaries of this zone.

The most important individual targets situated in the zone of combat operations of antiaircraft missile units may be covered directly by antiaircraft artillery with a view to strengthening their cover against strikes by the air enemy from low and medium altitudes.

129. The main requirements which antiair defense of troops are called upon to meet are constant combat readiness, invincible resistance, and unbroken action.

Constant combat readiness on the part of the forces and weapons of antiair defense is ensured by:

—thorough training of the combat crews of antiaircraft missile [one line missing];

—adherence by subunits of antiair defense to the fixed procedure for combat duty;

—maintaining antiaircraft missile (artillery) and radar equipment in good condition;

—timely carrying out of routine maintenance work, checking that the systems are ready for action, and careful expenditure of resources for the work;

—constant maintenance of prescribed supplies of antiaircraft missiles (ammunition) ready for use.

Invincible resistance of antiair defense is achieved by its zonal formation, by setting up the most favorable grouping of the forces and weapons of antiair defense and their timely maneuver during combat, by repelling the air enemy's strikes from any altitude (direction), and applying the most effective methods of coordination between antiaircraft missile units, antiaircraft artillery, and fighter aviation and of controlling their combat operations.

Unbroken action on the part of antiair defense is achieved by the capability of antiair defense troops to wage intensive combat operations for a long time under conditions of great aggressiveness on the part of the air enemy, by constantly carrying out reconnaissance, firm control of fire, uninterrupted material and technical support, and also by taking steps to protect antiair defense weapons against weapons of mass destruction.

130. Reconnaissance of the air enemy is one of the most important ways of providing support for the combat operations of antiair defense troops.

The main task of reconnaissance against the air enemy lies in his timely detection and the notification of one's own troops, primarily antiaircraft missile (artillery) units and aircraft, about him, and in keeping a continuous watch on his operations.

Reconnaissance of the air enemy is conducted in a division by the radar stations of antiaircraft missile units (subunits), and also by visual observation of the air enemy from control points, units, and subunits.

Information about the air enemy comes to the commander of antiair defense of the division:

—from the nearest radar posts;

—from the reconnaissance and target designation radar stations of the division's antiaircraft units;

—from the command post of antiair defense of the army.

The information obtained by troop, air, and radio reconnaissance is made use of in support of antiair defense troops.

On the basis of the information received regarding the air situation and on the basis of instructions from the divisional commanding officer, the commander of antiair defense of the division organizes antiair defense, communications, and control of the weapons for antiair defense, defines more precisely their combat tasks to the divisional antiaircraft units (subunits), and notifies the units of the division about the air enemy.

131. Antiair defense of a division (regiment) is organized on the basis of a decision by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer and on instructions from the superior headquarters.

The grouping of the antiair defense weapons of the division must ensure cover for the units of the division, primarily those on the main axis.

When planning combat and during it, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer sets tasks personally and through the commander of antiair defense for the employment of the division's (regiment's) antiair defense weapons, gives instructions about coordination, and lays down the procedure for material and technical support.

132. Antiair defense of the division is organized by the commander of antiair defense in person.

It is his duty:

—to know the division's task and to be familiar with the situation all the time;

—to ensure that he receives information regarding the air enemy and to organize timely notification of the division's units about this enemy;

—to inform the subordinate antiaircraft units (subunits) about the antiair defense tasks and to check that they are being carried out;

—to determine the combat formation of antiaircraft units (subunits), taking into account the overall grouping of antiair defense weapons, and to see that his units (subunits) change their locations in time;

—to organize control of subordinate units (subunits);

—to organize coordination between the division's antiaircraft units (subunits) and inform them of the procedure for coordination with fighter aviation, and also of the recognition signals of one's own aircraft;

—to take steps to ensure that antiaircraft units (subunits) receive their supplies of missiles (ammunition), fuel, and technical equipment in time.

133. Antiair defense of the regiment is organized by the regimental commanding officer.

It is his duty:

—to set combat tasks to the regiment's antiaircraft subunits;

—to coordinate the operations of antiaircraft weapons with those of covering subunits;

—to give instructions regarding the use of small arms fire against low-flying targets;

—to take steps for the timely dispersal, provision of cover for, and camouflaging of, subunits;

—to organize the receipt of signals and the notification of subunits about the air enemy;

—to take steps to ensure the timely provision of material and technical support for subunits.

134. Antiaircraft units (subunits) are controlled by the commander of antiair defense, usually from the division's command post.

As a rule, the control of the combat operations of antiaircraft units under conditions of [two words missing] should be centralized.

When the air enemy attacks suddenly from low altitudes, when the depth of the radar field is insufficient, and when there are sudden changes in the air

situation, control of antiaircraft units (subunits) is decentralized.

135. On receiving information about an enemy air attack, the commander of antiair defense immediately brings antiaircraft units (subunits) to increased combat readiness and, if necessary, makes more precise their fire tasks and the tasks of the radar means.

When the enemy carries out sudden air attacks, the commanding officers of antiaircraft units (subunits) open fire and continue to fire independently.

During combat, the commander of antiair defense of the division continuously clarifies the situation in the air and makes more precise the combat tasks of the antiaircraft units (subunits), sees that they change their locations (maneuver) in good time and checks their operations, estimates the expenditure of antiaircraft missiles (ammunition) and takes steps for their timely replenishment, and also reports to the divisional commanding officer and to the army antiair defense command post on any changes in the air situation and on the operations of the division's antiair defense weapons.

In addition, the commander of antiair defense keeps the division's antiaircraft units (subunits) informed about changes in the situation on the ground and in the air and about the operations of one's own aircraft over the division's area (zone).

Chapter 7

Movement of Troops

136. In the highly mobile modern combat operations, a considerably greater role is played by movement of troops, especially by marches. Consequently, troops must always be ready to move long distances under conditions of the possible use of weapons of mass destruction by the enemy, of attacks by his aircraft, of the existence of zones of radioactive and chemical contamination, and of ruined roads and river crossings. Dispersed, concealed, and rapid movement is the best way to protect troops against the enemy's nuclear strikes.

Large units and units can accomplish moves by marching, can be transported by rail, water, and air, or can be moved by a combination of these ways. The main way of moving troops is marching.

Whatever way the movement takes place, troops must arrive in the designated area in time and in full combat readiness.

1. The March

137. A march is the organized movement of troops in columns along roads and cross-country routes with the aim of reaching a designated area. Troops carry out marches in vehicles (under their own power), while motorized-rifle subunits also march on foot (on skis). When carrying out marches, tanks, launchers, and other tracked vehicles may be transported on heavy duty vehicle trailers.

As a rule, marching is done at night and under other conditions of limited visibility. Marching may be done by day during combat operations when the situation calls for this and also in the deep rear of one's own troops.

138. Depending on the tasks and the extent to which personnel and vehicles have been subjected to strain, marching is divided into normal and forced marches.

The distance covered in twenty-four hours and the speed with which troops move depend on the tasks, whether the troops are seasoned ones, the ability of commanding

officers to lead columns, the preparedness of drivers, the technical condition of vehicles, the number and condition of the routes, the weather, the time of the year and of the day, and also on the planning and provision of support for the march.

In the case of a normal march, the distance covered in twenty-four hours can be 200 to 250 km, and in a forced march — 250 to 350 km and sometimes even more.

The average speed at which mixed and tank columns move in carrying out marches along roads can be 15 to 20 kph at night, and 20 to 30 kph by day. Vehicle columns can move along dirt roads at night at a speed of 25 to 30 kph, and by day at a speed of 30 to 40 kph.

In all cases, marches must be carried out at the maximum speed possible under the prevailing conditions.

139. Marches may be carried out in expectation of an encounter with the enemy or without any danger of a clash with him.

In planning a march when an encounter with the enemy is envisaged, arrangements are made above all to ensure that the troops are in constant combat readiness and can be deployed quickly. If a clash with the enemy is not expected, marches are planned to afford convenient movement, the achievement of a fast rate of march, and as little strain as possible on personnel, as well as the minimum wear and tear on combat equipment. With this aim, the best roads are selected for the movement, routes are prepared in advance, and columns are formed of units and subunits which can march at the same speed and have equal cross-country performance.

140. To carry out a march, a division is allotted a movement zone or 3 or 4 routes; as a rule, a division of the first echelon is given a movement zone.

The division's movement zone must be wide enough to ensure the possibility of selecting a sufficient number of routes to enable the division to maneuver in the event of the creation of [one line missing] contamination, as well as the requirements of camouflage and protection against weapons of mass destruction.

If possible, movement routes should not pass through large inhabitated places, road junctions, defiles, and points close to railroad stations. As a rule, the distance between routes should be not less than 3 km.

In all cases, it is advisable to allot alternate and lateral movement routes, which should be prepared at the same time as the main routes and used as directed by the divisional commanding officer.

Tank subunits and missile units may be allotted independent routes.

141. A regiment marches as part of the division or independently. It is allotted one or two routes.

When marching as part of the division, a regiment may move in the column of the main forces or it may form the forward detachment, and in a withdrawal—the division's rear guard. A regiment moving at the head of the column of main forces is an advance guard.

142. The organization of the division's (regiment's) march formation is determined by the impending task, the distance and actions of the enemy, the number of routes, and other factors in the situation.

When carrying out a march in expectation of an encounter with the enemy, the march formation of the division (regiment) consists of reconnaissance and security troops, the forward detachment (if one is sent out), the columns of main forces, and columns of rear units (subunits).

If the division (regiment) is carrying out the march in the rear of one's own troops, its march formation usually consists of columns of main forces and columns of rear subunits.

In all cases of marching, columns of the main forces of a division and of a regiment are broken up in depth into columns of battalions (batalon) (battalions) ((divizion)).

143. The distances between units, subunits, and vehicles are fixed in accordance with the speed at which they are to move and with the situation, and can be the following: between regiments, 5 to 10 km; between battalions (battalions), 3 to 5 km; and between vehicles, 25 to 50 m.

When moving under conditions of radioactive contamination of the terrain, along dusty roads, on icy roads, and roads with steep gradients and sharp turns, the distances between vehicles are increased.

144. For the timely beginning of a march and for controlling the speed at which the columns move, an initial line (point) and control lines (points) are fixed, together with the time at which they are to be passed. Control lines are usually arranged so that they are reached after moving for 2oto 3 hours.

The initial line and the control lines should not be arranged at rivers, passes, and defiles.

Troops pass the initial line and the control lines at the appointed time with the heads of their columns.

145. To preserve the personnel's strength, to check the state of and to service and carry out minor repairs, to vehicles, short and long halts and day (night) rests are arranged.

Short halts of 20 to 30 minutes are arranged after every 2 to 3 hours of marching. The organization of the columns is not broken at halts; the distances between units and subunits, fixed for the march, are maintained; vehicles in columns of subunits stop on the right shoulder of the road at distances of not less that 10 m one behind the other or at distances laid down by the commanding officer.

Long halts of 2 to 4 hours are arranged at the beginning of the second half of a twenty-four hour march only in cases of forced marches; when moving at night, and in winter in sharp frost, long halts are usually not arranged.

A day (night) rest is arranged after a night (day) march.

For long halts and for a day (night) rest, areas should be selected which provide favorable conditions for protection against nuclear weapons and for the camouflage of troops and which also have adequate supplies

of water. Troops leave the road and station themselves dispersed by battalions (battalions) in the areas allotted to them, in a way that will ensure the maintenance of constant combat readiness and will enable them to form columns in as short a time as possible.

146. In marching, reconnaissance is conducted with the aim of determining the condition of the roads and river crossings, of clarifying the axis on which cross-country routes should be laid out, of discovering obstacles and contaminated zones, and finding ways of making a detour around them. In carrying out marches in expectation of an encounter with the enemy, reconnaissance of the enemy is also organized.

If the march is taking place without any danger of a clash with the enemy, reconnoitering groups are sent out in advance to reconnoiter movement routes and areas for halts and rest.

Radiation and chemical reconnaissance is conducted on the march by all reconnaissance subunits, subunits for march security, and in the columns of the main forces.

Engineer reconnaissance is conducted by subunits of engineer troops included in the composition of reconnoitering groups and of reconnaissance subunits, and by movement protection detachments.

147. Troops marching in expectation of an encounter with the enemy are protected by march security and local security troops. If the march is being carried out at the rear of one's own troops, as a rule, only local security is organized.

March security must ensure unrestricted movement of the columns of main forces, prevent the enemy making surprise attacks on the troops being protected, and, by conducting active operations, ensure that the troops get time and favorable conditions for deploying and joining battle; it must also prevent the enemy's ground reconnaissance from penetrating the zone in which the troops being protected are moving.

For frontal protection (on the movement route), regiments which are moving at the head of the column of

main forces send out advance guards or advance parties. On the movement routes of the division's main forces, advance guards may be detailed on instructions from the divisional commanding officer.

Regiments which are moving behind regiments marching in front of them are provided only with local protection, and if there is a danger of enemy ground attacks from the flanks and from the rear, flank and rear protection may also be provided.

Protection of threatened flanks is undertaken by flank advance guards or by flank security detachments. If necessary, stationary flank security detachments may be set up to the sides of the movement route to occupy and hold advantageous lines (objectives) on the most important axes while the division's (regiment's) columns are passing.

Protection from the rear is undertaken by rear security detachments.

When moving off, each regiment marching in the rear of the division's main forces usually mounts a rear guard. If the regiment moves off along two routes, a rear guard is not detailed, protection of the columns being undertaken by rear security detachments.

The strength and composition of the security troops, as well as their distance from the main forces, depend on the enemy's location and the nature of his operations, on the task which is to be fulfilled, and on the division's (regiment's) march formation and on the nature of the terrain. As a rule, advance guards and rear guards are sent out each at the strength of a reinforced battalion and march and stationary flank security detachments--at the strength of a reinforced platoon up to a reinforced company.

Advance guards and rear guards are sent out to a distance of 20 to 30 km, and march security detachments--to a distance of 5 to 10 km.

For local protection, each battalion sends out patrol vehicles to a distance of 1.5 km; in addition, all-around observation is organized in all subunits.

When columns stop, march security subunits take up favorable lines and continue to carry out protection; in areas of day (night) rest, march security troops assume security functions or are replaced by troops freshly detailed for the purpose.

148. When on the march, troops are protected against nuclear weapons and other means of mass destruction by strict adherence to the fixed distances and intervals, by precluding concentrations of troops near the initial line, at halts, in inhabited places, in passes and at river crossings, by thorough organization of radiation and chemical reconnaissance, by timely notification of troops about radioactive, chemical, and bacteriological /one line missing/ eliminating the effects of the enemy's use of weapons of mass destruction.

Partial medical treatment of personnel and partial decontamination and degassing of vehicles and equipment are carried out on the move or at short halts. Full medical treatment, decontamination, degassing, and disinfection are usually carried out at long halts, in areas of day (night) rest, or on reaching the appointed area.

149. Antiair defense of troops on the march is undertaken by the weapons of senior commanders and by the division's (regiment's) antiaircraft weapons. Especially good cover must be provided for troops when they are moving through passes, road junctions, and over river crossings, and when they are at long halts and in areas of day (night) rest.

Antiaircraft missile units (subunits) and antiaircraft artillery of medium caliber move in the columns of main forces or in independent columns along separate routes in readiness to deploy to cover troops. Some of the subunits may be sent forward and deployed in advance at the most important points.

Antiaircraft artillery of small caliber moves in the columns by batteries or by platoons in readiness to open fire at short halts, and self-propelled antiaircraft artillery is held in readiness to open fire from the march.

For firing at low-flying targets, use is made of the antiaircraft machine guns of combat vehicles.

At long halts and in areas of day (night) rest, anti-aircraft subunits take up firing positions in such a way that when marching is resumed, they will be able to form up quickly in the columns.

150. Engineer support for a march includes: engineer reconnaissance of the movement routes, of crossings over water obstacles, of the areas for halts and day (night) rests and for sources of water; clearing, preparing, and camouflaging movement routes, river crossings, and areas for long halts and for rest; support of the passage of columns to move over difficult stretches of roads and cross-country routes.

A detachment to provide movement support, which usually moves with the march security detachment, is allotted to each route. When there is no danger of a clash with the enemy, the detachment to provide movement support is sent out in advance.

To prepare routes in the event of a change in the axis of the movement, it is advisable to create an engineer reserve in the division.

151. In preparing for a march, all mobile troop supplies are brought up to norms, and technical servicing of equipment, combat and transport vehicles is carried out.

As a rule, replenishment of mobile supplies during a march is carried out in areas of long halts and day (night) rests by means of vehicles, and, if necessary, also by air transport. In addition, combat and transport vehicles can be refuelled at short halts. When marching in the rear area of one's own troops, it is advisable to transport fuel in advance to areas of long halts and day (night) rest.

Rear subunits of a division (regiment) follow the main forces in independent columns. Occasionally, some of the rear subunits of a regiment may move together with the rear subunits of the division.

Technical servicing of combat and transport vehicles in preparing for a march and during a march is carried out to the extent that will ensure that the vehicles will stand up reliably under the march and will arrive in the appointed area in a state of full technical repair and readiness for further operations.

To provide technical help for vehicles which break down, for their repair and evacuation and refuelling with fuel and lubricating oil, as well as for giving medical assistance to personnel, arrangements are made in the division (regiment) for technical services to bring up the rear of columns; for the composition of these services the division (regiment) assigns repair and evacuation means, medical personnel, and vehicles with armored and motor-tractor equipment and with fuel and lubricating oil.

If there are passes, river crossings, and other difficult stretches on movement routes, repair facilities and tank prime movers are sent forward to these places in advance or together with the detachments to provide movement support.

Combat and transport vehicles which have broken down during the march are moved to the right shoulder of the road or to the right of the road and are usually repaired at the spot where they have broken down. If it is impossible or inadvisable to repair them on the spot, they are evacuated to the nearest assembly point for damaged vehicles.

As a rule, sick and wounded on the march are evacuated by organic transport to the nearest medical posts (establishments).

152. On receiving a task, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer issues the necessary instructions regarding preparation for the march.

On the basis of the commanding officer's instructions, divisional (regimental) headquarters organizes reconnaissance on the axis of the move and issues preliminary instructions in which are laid down the axis, distance, and duration of the impending march, the time at which the troops must be ready to move out, and the main measures for preparing the troops. For making a decision, the headquarters prepares for the commanding officer reports on the enemy, the terrain, the road network, and the radiation situation on the axis of the move, tentative calculations for the march, and suggestions regarding the organization of the march formation and the ways in which the troops should be controlled and supported during the march.

In making a decision, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer must take into consideration the distance

of the enemy and the possibility that he will make use of weapons of mass destruction and deliver air strikes.

The tasks for the march are usually conveyed to troops in the form of a written combat order, and if time does not permit this, in the form of combat instructions.

In the divisional (regimental) commanding officer's order, the following are indicated:

-- information about the enemy;

-- the division's (regiment's) task, the movement routes, the initial line (point), and the control lines (points);

-- the tasks of troops operating ahead and of neighboring troops;

-- the composition and tasks of the forward detachment (if one is sent out) and of the march security troops;

-- the tasks of units (subunits), the movement routes, the places of the troops in the march column, the areas and times at which the troops are to concentrate on completing the march, the time at which troops are to pass the initial line (point) and the control lines, and the time and areas for long halts and day (night) rest;

-- antiair defense tasks and camouflage procedures;

-- the composition of the detachments for providing movement support;

-- the places in which control points are to proceed and the procedure for maintaining communications.

153. Columns are formed in such a way that the column of each battalion approaches the initial point at the moment when the column moving ahead has gone past and is a given distance beyond it.

To speed up the forming of columns, columns are formed in the disposition areas of battalions.

The assembling in one place before the march starts of more than one battalion is not permitted.

154. Troops on the march must adhere strictly to the fixed procedure, especially in regard to speed and distances. Vehicles move only on the right side of the road, while the left side of the road is kept free for oncoming traffic and for passing.

The passing of one column by another is permitted only with the permission of the divisional (regimental) commanding officer. To speed up passing, and also to avoid subunits getting mixed up and to avert collisions between vehicles, the column which is being passed stops on the right shoulder of the road or to the right of the road.

When being attacked by the air enemy, as a rule, columns continue to move.

Troops pass through gorges and cross bridges without stopping and at the greatest possible speed. In moving over bridges, steps are taken to ensure that this can be done safely. If a column gets delayed in a narrow place, the next column should be halted in good time in an area where there is cover.

155. Control of troops on the march is carried out from mobile control points, the places in which these are to proceed being determined by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer in accordance with the task which is being fulfilled and with the situation. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer usually moves at the head of the column of the main forces.

Communications on the march are conducted mainly by mobile means, and in subunits, in addition, by means of signalling. To check troop movement and to convey instructions, extensive use is made of helicopters.

Before a clash with the enemy, the use of radio sets for transmission is prohibited. For the transmission of short radio signals to report when heads of columns of regiments pass control lines, ultrashort wave radio sets are sent to these lines, the procedure for operating such sets being laid down by the commanding officer in the light of the situation and of considerations to ensure concealment of the march.

Radio relay and line means of communication, available on the movement routes, are used as directed by the superior headquarters.

156. When there is a sharp change in the movement axis, the divisional (regimental) commander must stop the reconnaissance and security subunits which have moved ahead along the former axis and indicate the procedure for their further operations.

On the new axis, reconnaissance and security detachments, detachments for providing movement support and the commandant's service are organized immediately and sent forward.

The columns of main forces are directed to the new routes by the shortest and most convenient ways in the former order or after any essential reforming has taken place.

157. Marches in winter in deep snow and in low temperatures require preparation and the maintenance of roads in a usable state, the equipping of lateral routes to facilitate the deployment and maneuver of troops, as well as a sufficient number of passing points, pulloffs and bypasses around natural obstacles, the taking of steps to warn personnel about frostbite hazards, the preparation of equipment and vehicles so that they can be used in low temperatures, and the provision of devices and means for increasing the cross-country performance of wheeled and tracked vehicles. Vehicles intended to transport troops are fitted out with awnings (tent) and other coverings.

Flank march security troops are sent forward in vehicles with an improved cross-country performance, or stationary flank security detachments are set up.

Short halts may be arranged more frequently.

Marches should end at places which are protected from the wind and where there is fuel.

158. In planning marches during the season of bad roads, it is essential to make provision for organizing strong detachments to provide movement support, for detailing prime movers to difficult stretches of routes, and for other measures calculated to improve the cross-country performance of wheeled and tracked vehicles.

With a view to helping vehicles which get stuck and ensuring that there is no interruption of movement, it is expedient to disperse vehicles with higher cross-country

performance among the columns.

To move tracked vehicles, if possible, use is made of the shoulders of roads and of cross-country routes.

159. Marches through forests are supported by increased reconnaissance. Roads and lanes are reconnoitered especially thoroughly and traffic control is organized. Control lines are arranged more frequently.

On forest roads and lanes passing points are arranged and, if necessary, the surface of the road is widened in some places and trees are cleared away. Provision is made for measures to deal with fires and to clear the roads of possible log obstacles (zaval) and other obstacles.

160. Marches in mountainous country are planned in accordance with the profile of the route. It is essential to pay special attention to the preparation of movement routes at sharp turns, ascents and descents, to the provision of air cover for troops, and to traffic control where troops pass through gorges, passes and when they cross mountain rivers.

The speed with which the troops move may be reduced when they go through passes and on descents and ascents, while the distance between vehicles is increased to the limits of safe movement.

On dangerous stretches of the routes, barriers and signs which can be easily seen are set up. At narrow places, sharp turns, and passes, towing vehicles and traffic control posts equipped with means of communications are positioned.

Troops must have resources prepared in advance to cross mountain rivers and overcome steep ascents and descents, including braking equipment for vehicles and guns.

It is advisable to disperse technical means of support among the columns.

To forestall the enemy in seizing passes, outlets from gorges, and road junctions, forward detachments are sent out or tactical airborne forces are landed.

With the aim of securing the flanks, stationary flank security detachments are set up which occupy positions on

commanding heights, in mountain passes, and on roads leading to the movement routes.

161. In organizing marches in deserts and steppes, special attention is paid to reconnaissance and to marking out the movement routes, to radiation reconnaissance, and the securing of flanks, and also to the preparation of equipment and vehicles so that they can be used in high temperatures and in sandy conditions. The duration of marches is usually determined in conformity with the availability of sources of water and of supplies of fuel on the movement axis, as well as with the capabilities of bringing up water and fuel.

Before the march starts, personnel and vehicles are provided with enough water to last them until they get to the nearest source of water or water supply point.

2. Transport of Troops

162. Large units and units are transported mainly by rail (water) transport. To move troops rapidly over long distances, use may be made of air transport.

163. Before embarkation, troops are disposed in waiting areas, and after disembarkation they proceed to assembly areas.

The distance of the waiting areas from the embarkation places and the distance of the assembly areas from the places of disembarkation are determined by local conditions, taking into account plans to protect troops against weapons of mass destruction, as well as of antiair defense plans, and must be not less than 5 km. In addition to the main waiting and assembly areas, alternate areas are selected.

Waiting and assembly areas must be suitable for troop camouflage and must have natural cover and convenient routes for moving into and out of them.

Troops are disposed in waiting areas with a view to their distribution by echelons (ships and trips), as well as to the order in which units (subunits) are to move to embarkation places.

In waiting areas, shelters for personnel and combat equipment are arranged if possible in advance, wire communications are laid, camouflage work is carried out, and movement routes to embarkation places are prepared.

164. To reduce the time for organizing the transportation of troops, divisional (regimental) headquarters must constantly have prepared calculations for the transportation of troops by various types of transport, which are made more precise as the combat and numerical strength of the division (regiment) changes.

Calculations for transportation are made with an eye to keeping units and subunits organizationally intact and ready for going into combat independently after disembarking.

165. In preparing for troop transportation, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer, together with his staff, the officers commanding the arms of troops and the services, and the commanding officers of units (subunits), carry out reconnoitering with the aim of studying the areas (railroad stations, airfields, landing strips) and the conditions under which the troops will embark; of clarifying the waiting areas and the approaches to them and to the embarkation places; of determining what measures should be taken to protect troops from weapons of mass destruction; for antiair defense, camouflage, and engineer preparation of the embarkation area and the movement routes, and to organize the commandant's service and traffic control; and also to determine the procedure for the control of units (subunits) and the maintenance of communications with them while they are embarking.

166. In transporting troops by rail and water transport, railroad stations, ports, and piers at which troops are to embark and disembark are selected. Sometimes a division may be allotted an embarkation (disembarkation) area.

As a rule, a regiment embarks (disembarks) at one railroad station, port, or pier.

167. On receiving an order for the transportation of troops by rail, divisional (regimental) headquarters send an accurate estimate of the number of echelons to the military commandant of the railroad sector (station) and receives from him military echelon serial numbers, as well as instructions regarding the places for embarking, the approaches to them, and the time when embarking is to start and be completed.

Calculations for the transportation of troops by water transport are made by divisional (regimental) headquarters in conjunction with the military transportation organs.

168. On the basis of the commanding officer's decision, his instructions, and the details received from the military transportation organs, divisional (regimental) headquarters draw up an order for troop transportation and an embarkation plan.

The order for troop transportation indicates: the type of transport; the number of echelons and their serial numbers; the times and railroad stations (ports, piers) for embarkation; the waiting areas of units (subunits); the routes and the order in which troops will move to the waiting areas and to the embarkation places; the measures to support troops while they are embarking and while they are en route; the quantity and echeloning of supplies; the procedure for transporting the control element of the division (regiment) and the serial number of the echelon in which the divisional (regimental) commanding officer will move; the representatives assigned to the troop embarkation and disembarkation areas.

In the order for troop transportation issued by a regiment, the chiefs of echelons are indicated in addition.

169. To ensure continuous control of troops while they are embarking, communications are organized with units (subunits) situated in the waiting areas, with the representatives of headquarters at railroad stations (ports, piers) where embarkation is taking place, and with the military commandant. Communications in embarkation areas are maintained by wire and mobile means.

The divisional (regimental) commanding officer controls troops while they are in transit by rail (by waterway) through the military transportation organs, and when they are being conveyed by sea transport - with the help of signalling means and via the radio sets of naval commanding officers.

The commanding officer and staff of a regiment usually move as part of the first echelon, while as a rule the commanding officer and staff of a division follow after one or two regiments have moved out. To organize the embarkation and dispatch of subsequent echelons, the deputy divisional (regimental) commanding officer stays behind with a group of officers.

170. Subunits move out of waiting areas usually in columns of battalions or companies in a way calculated to ensure that on reaching the embarkation place, they can start to embark immediately.

Embarkation and disembarkation of personnel, and the loading and unloading of equipment, vehicles, and freight must be done as quickly as possible, care being taken to avoid accidents and damage to means of transportation.

While they are being transported, troops must be in constant readiness to disembark and to continue further movement by marching.

171. Cover against enemy air strikes for troops being transported is provided in areas of embarkation, en route, and in areas of disembarkation by the division's (regiment's) antiaircraft weapons, as well as by the weapons of the senior commander who is organizing the transportation.

Radiation and chemical reconnaissance in the waiting and assembly areas and while the troops are moving by rail (water) is conducted by the forces and means of the troops being transported. In addition, information regarding the radiation and chemical situation on the routes of communication must be received by the headquarters and chiefs of echelons from the military transportation organs.

172. As a rule, troops being transported by rail and water transport are provided with mobile material supplies of all kinds and, in addition, with traveling and disembarkation rations in quantities fixed by the senior commander. Mobile material supplies of all kinds should be dispersed among several echelons (ships).

In organizing technical support, special attention is paid to preparing combat equipment for transportation and subsequent operations, as well as to putting all equipment which needs repairing into service before it is moved off for loading. Damaged vehicles and equipment which cannot be transported with their subunits remain with their crews (drivers, teams) at repair workshops and, after having been repaired, are transported with other subunits or with repair workshops. Combat and transport vehicles which cannot be repaired by the time that the division's embarkation is completed are handed over on the decision of the divisional commanding officer to front (district) repair units.

For the timely provision of medical assistance during transportation and after disembarkation, the medical resources of the division and of regiments are distributed among the echelons (ships).

173. To transport troops by air, airfields or landing strips for embarkation and disembarkation are assigned.

The number of airfields (landing strips) assigned for the embarkation and disembarkation of a division (regiment) depends on its task and the plan of impending operations, on the number of airfields (landing strips) available, on the number of military-transport aircraft detailed to transport the troops, on the time and the order in which units (subunits) are to be transported, and on conditions of the terrain.

174. On receiving an order for troop transportation, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer and his staff, together with the commanding officer of the military transport aviation large unit (unit), determine the order in which the troops are to be transported, make calculations for their transportation, allot main and alternate airfields (landing strips) to units for embarkation and disembarkation, determine the waiting and assembly areas, and the procedure and the time for the concentration of troops in the areas before embarkation and after disembarkation.

On the basis of the commanding officer's decision, divisional (regimental) headquarters, together with the headquarters of the military transport aviation large unit (unit), work out a plan for the transportation of the troops which is signed by the commanding officers and chiefs of staff of the large unit (unit) to be transported and of the military transport aviation large unit (unit) which is to carry the troops; the plan is approved by the senior commanders who are planning the move.

175. When time permits, troops are given training in embarking in and disembarking from aircraft (helicopters), and in loading and unloading weapons, armored, motor and tractor, and other equipment and freight.

In preparing for transportation, the following are checked: that the personnel know the rules of conduct on airfields and in flight and the procedure laid down for embarkation and disembarkation; that weapons, combat equipment, transport, and gear are ready for loading; that surplus gear is withdrawn from units (subunits) and from personnel; that units (subunits) are provided with mobile material supplies in quantities fixed by the commander organizing the transportation.

176. At the appointed time, subunits move off from the waiting areas to the initial position for embarkation, and on a fixed signal they embark in the aircraft (helicopters).

The loading of equipment and freight and the embarkation of personnel are carried out under the direction of aviation commanding officers.

177. When troops are transported in a combined way, railroad and water transport are used in the first place to transport tanks, launchers, tracked armored personnel carriers and prime movers, heavy artillery, and also heavy freight.

The time at which transportation by each type of transport is to start is fixed with a view to ensuring that, if possible, the troops going by various types of transport should reach the concentration area at the same time. If necessary, some of the subunits may be moved to the concentration area by air transport at the same time as transportation by other types of transport starts.

The divisional (regimental) commanding officer and his staff usually travel where most of the division (regiment) is being transported and where their quickest arrival in the appointed area will be ensured. The control of troops being transported by other types of transport is undertaken by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer's deputy and by officers detailed by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer.

178. The transportation of tanks, launchers, tracked armored personnel carriers, and other tracked vehicles on heavy-duty motor trailers can be carried out only on suffaced roads and on improved dirt roads.

To load combat equipment on vehicle trailers and unloading it from them, areas with good roads leading out to the main movement routes are selected.

The average speed at which columns of vehicle prime movers with heavy-duty trailers move along surfaced roads can be 20 to 25 kph, and along improved dirt roads - 10 to 15 kph. Depending on the condition of the road and on visibility conditions, the distances between vehicles can be 50 to 75 m.

Tank and missile subunits which are not transported on heavy-duty motor prime movers move in independent columns on organic transport.

In transporting combat equipment on heavy-duty vehicle trailers in winter, it is essential to include in the columns vehicles with high cross-country performance fitted with attachments for clearing snow off the road.

Chapter 8

Meeting Engagement

1. General Principles

179. A meeting engagement is the form of combat operations in which both sides perform the tasks they have been given by an offensive.

A meeting engagement will occur most often on the deployment of the division's (regiment's) main forces from route columns from the march, especially during the initial period of a war.

A division (regiment) can conduct a meeting engagement independently or in conjunction with other large units (units).

180. The characteristic features of a meeting engagement are: the two sides approach each other rapidly, the situation is unclear, sharp changes occur in it, and the combat operations last for a short time; intensive fighting to gain time, to seize and keep the initiative; combat operations extending over a wide front, room to maneuver, and usually the presence of open flanks.

Consequently, to create favorable conditions for routing the enemy, a meeting engagement calls for the following:

-- timely organization /1 or 2 words missing/ of deep reconnaissance with the aim of obtaining reliable information regarding the advancing enemy;

-- creating the essential grouping of forces and weapons even while the march is being organized;

-- timely adoption of a decision and rapid transmission of tasks to troops;

-- forestalling the enemy in delivering fire strikes, seizing advantageous lines, deploying the main forces, and going over to the attack;

-- rapid maneuvering to concentrate forces and weapons on the decisive axis and delivering a strong surprise strike against the enemy's flanks and rear, breaking him up and annihilating him piecemeal;

-- providing constant support for the flanks and rear and reliably organizing antiair defense;

-- displaying great initiative by commanding officers at all levels.

181. Reconnaissance on the march in expectation of a meeting engagement must establish as early as possible the movement axis of the enemy's columns, the strength and composition of his forces, and, in the first place, the presence of missile and tank units, his deployment lines and approach routes to them, and the nature of the terrain in the area of the impending meeting engagement; it must also detect possible sectors of radioactive and chemical contamination.

If necessary, supplementary reconnaissance is organized.

Higher headquarters must ensure that divisional (regimental) headquarters receive reconnaissance information direct from airborne reconnaissance plans.

182. The plan of operations and the grouping of the forces and means of a division (regiment) on the march in expectation of a meeting engagement must ensure forestalling the enemy in the seizure of advantageous positions and in the deployment of the main forces in combat formation. Reinforcements are attached in advance to units (subunits), ensuring that they can go into combat independently from the march.

Forestalling the enemy in opening fire and in deploying for going over to the attack is of decisive significance in a meeting engagement and can lead to the defeat of a stronger enemy who is not yet ready for combat. Consequently, it is incumbent upon commanding officers to make decisions and give tasks to subordinates quickly, to seize the initiative, and to act boldly and decisively, imposing their will on the enemy.

Incomplete information regarding the situation when a meeting engagement is joined does not entitle the commanding officer to delay the making of a decision. He who waits for clarification of the situation loses the initiative and will be defeated by the enemy.

In deploying, complicated and unnecessary movements leading to loss of time should be avoided.

183. The enemy must be thrown into confusion on the march before the meeting engagement is joined. To disrupt the enemy's organized advance and create conditions for routing him piecemeal, aircraft, missile troops, and artillery, even before the deployment of the division's (regiment's) main forces, deliver strikes against the advancing enemy columns, especially in areas where there are river crossings, gorges, and marshy sectors.

While the march security troops are engaged in combat, missile troops and artillery neutralize and destroy the enemy's nuclear weapons, his tanks, artillery, his personnel, and control points, thus providing support for the deployment of the main forces and their attacks. In addition, aircraft carry out aerial reconnaissance and provide cover for troops against enemy air strikes.

184. As a rule, in a meeting engagement the division (regiment) delivers strikes with its main forces on the enemy's flanks and rear, while part of its forces contain his main grouping from the front. In cases where it is essential to exploit the results of using nuclear and chemical weapons rapidly, as well as when it is difficult to maneuver troops so that they can reach the flanks and the rear or when considerable time would be needed for this, the strike can also be delivered from the front. In this, the axis on which the main strike is to be delivered is selected in a zone where the terrain is favorable for tank operations.

In a meeting engagement, the basis for maneuvering troops must be the aim to dismember the enemy columns and destroy them separately by decisive actions.

The division's immediate task is to rout the main forces of the opposing enemy and to seize an advantageous line or area.

As a rule, the immediate task of regiments delivering strikes at the enemy's flanks and rear coincides in depth with the immediate task of the division.

Simultaneously with the immediate task, the division (regiment) is given an axis for its further advance to complete the rout of the enemy and to seize important objectives in his rear.

On the deployment of a division (regiment) for a meeting engagement, a strong reserve is formed.

185. To deliver a strike against the enemy from the rear and prevent his withdrawal, to seize important lines (objectives) and to hold them until the approach of the main forces, as well as to annihilate the enemy's means of mass destruction, use is made of tactical airborne forces.

186. In a meeting engagement, it is essential to secure the flanks and rear by deep reconnaissance and by moving antitank weapons and reserves to the flanks.

2. Marching in Expectation of a Meeting Engagement

187. Before making a decision to march in expectation of a meeting engagement, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer clarifies the task he has been given, determines the measures which must be implemented before the beginning of the offensive, and which form the basis of preliminary instructions issued by the headquarters, organizes reconnaissance, and makes the necessary calculations for the march.

In evaluating the situation, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer studies first of all when and on what lines the enemy may be encountered, the strength and composition of the enemy grouping,and the possibilities for maneuver when deploying and during combat; he plans the grouping of forces and weapons and the possible tasks for units when encountering the enemy, the most advantageous movement routes, the lines (objectives) to be seized by the forward detachment and by airborne forces and the lines where the main forces are to be deployed.

In his decision to march in expectation of a meeting engagement, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer defines the following: the plan of operations on encountering the enemy; the organization of the march formation and the distribution of forces and weapons; the tasks of the forward detachment and of the march security troops; the tasks of units (subunits) on the march; the movement routes, the initial line, and the control lines.

In addition, the divisional commanding officer defines the composition and tasks of the tactical airborne forces, if they are being employed.

In planning a march, divisional (regimental) headquarters makes provision for the timely dispatch of reconnaissance elements, of the forward detachment, and of march security troops, draws up and conveys to units (subunits) the combat order for the march, and checks the preparation of the troops for the march, their support, and dispatch.

188. To carry out reconnaissance on the march in expectation of a meeting engagement, the division (regiment) sends out reconnaissance groups and reconnaissance detachments. Deep reconnaissance groups are sent forward to the area in which the enemy's main grouping and nuclear attack means are likely to deploy. If there are sectors of radioactive and chemical contamination on the division's (regiment's) movement axis, patrols (dozor) are dispatched for last-minute radiation and chemical reconnaissance.

As a rule, tactical radio-intelligence subunits, when marching, carry on reconnaissance on the move by intercepting the enemy's conversations.

189. The organization of the division's (regiment's) march formation in expectation of a meeting engagement is determined by the distance of the enemy, by the task and plan of impending operations, by the number of routes, and by other factors in the situation.

As a rule, the main forces of the division move along several routes, and of a regiment - along one or two routes.

The missile units of a division usually move in one of the columns of the division's main forces or along a separate route.

As a rule, the tank regiment of a motorized rifle division moves on an axis which will ensure the delivery of a strike against the enemy's flank and rear.

The motorized rifle regiment of a tank division may be assigned to the forward detachment, but when marching with the main forces it usually moves on an axis which will ensure rapid commitment to combat with the aim of containing the enemy's main grouping from the front.

The tank battalion of a motorized rifle regiment moves at full strength. Part of the tank battalion may be attached to the march security troops.

Artillery attached to regiments moves as part of the advance guard or at the head of the column of main forces. Artillery remaining under the direct command of the divisional commanding officer usually moves with the main forces.

To support the deployment of the division's (regiment's) main forces and their joining battle from the march, most of the subunits of engineer troops are attached to units (subunits) operating on the main axis. Subunits with means to lay minefields are assigned to support the regiment (battalion) designated to contain the enemy from the front.

190. To forestall the enemy in seizing and holding advantageous lines, when time permits, the division dispatches a forward detachment up to a reinforced regiment in strength. In certain cases a forward detachment composed of a reinforced company or battalion may be sent forward by a regiment moving along an independent route.

In his decision, the commanding officer of the forward detachment defines the following: the lines where a clash with the enemy may occur and the plan of operations; the tasks and the composition of reconnaissance troops and up to what line reconnaissance must be conducted; the tasks for subunits in seizing and holding the line allocated to the forward detachment; the organization of the forward detachment's march formation, the security measures, and the procedure for moving.

Protection of the forward detachment is usually undertaken by march security detachments up to a reinforced company in strength.

191. To preclude a surprise enemy attack on the main forces, to ensure their [one word missing] movement, deployment and orderly commitment to combat, a division (regiment) sends out march security troops.

Protection from the front (on the movement route) when a division is marching along several routes is carried out by advance guards up to a reinforced battalion in strength, sent forward by the leading regiments. On the movement routes of the division's main forces, advance guards may be sent out on instructions from the divisional commanding officer.

A regiment which is marching along two routes usually sends out an advance guard on the movement axis of the main forces, and on the other route - an advance march security detachment.

The distance of the advance guard from the main forces must be such as to ensure that combat can be joined in an orderly way, and can be 20 to 30 km, and that of the security detachment - 5 to 10 km.

Protection on threatened flanks is carried out by flank advance guards or by flank march security detachments. If necessary, stationary march flank detachments may be posted to the sides of the movement routes to occupy and hold advantageous lines (objectives) on the most important axes while the division's (regiment's) columns are passing.

Protection from the rear is carried out by rear march security detachments.

192. The rear units and subunits of a division on the march move in separate columns at a distance of 15 to 20 km from the main forces.

Rear subunits of a regiment usually follow in a separate column at a distance of 3 to 5 km from the main forces. When two regiments are moving along the same route, the rear subunits of the leading regiment may move together with the rear subunits of the second regiment.

The composition and movement routes of rear columns are determined on the basis of the decision taken by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer. Control of the rear columns is implemented by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer's deputy for rear services.

The replenishment of stocks of material supplies in subunits and units during a march is carried out at halts by the transfer of such stocks from divisional transport to regimental transport and directly to combat vehicles.

193. In organizing antiair defense for the division (regiment), the tasks which are being carried out by the forces and means of the senior commander are taken into account.

The division's antiaircraft units usually move by batteries behind the march security troops or with the columns of main forces, in readiness for immediate deployment. Some of the antiaircraft weapons may be assigned to form part of the division's forward detachment.

The regiment's antiaircraft subunits move with the columns of main forces in readiness to open fire from the march or at short halts.

On the march, reconnaissance of the air enemy is carried out by the means of the senior commander. Notification of troops is usually done by radio.

When the enemy attacks from the air, as a rule, columns continue to move.

194. Protection of troops against weapons of mass destruction is organized with special thoroughness when they have to pass through large inhabited places, gorges, and areas where there are river crossings. Special attention is paid to making use of concealed movement routes and the protective features of the terrain.

Detours are made around contaminated sectors on movement routes, and if this is impossible they are crossed with the use of protective equipment.

Subunits providing special treatment usually move behind the leading regiments in readiness to set up special treatment points.

195. When marching in expectation of a meeting engagement, a division's forward command post moves at the head of the column of main forces, and the command post - at the head of another column or in the rear of the column of one of the leading regiments.

The commanding officer of a regiment and the regimental staff move at the head of the column of the regiment's main forces.

The rear control point of a division (regiment) moves at the head of the column of rear units and subunits of the division (regiment).

To ensure reliable and uninterrupted communications when a meeting engagement is joined and during it, appropriate radio networks which provide immediate contact with any control point are set up already while the march is being organized.

3. The Motorized Rifle Division (Regiment) in a Meeting Engagement

196. On encountering the enemy's forward units, reconnaissance elements report this, make a detour around them, penetrate the enemy's main forces boldly, establish the composition and movement axes of his columns, the time at which they pass important lines and the beginning of their deployment; they also detect the places where the enemy's nuclear and chemical attack means are located, and watch for his reserves moving up from the depth.

Deep reconnaissance groups report everything discovered, paying attention in the first place to the detection of nuclear attack means and of approach axes of enemy columns, especially tank columns.

As soon as advance guards join combat, radio intelligence is deployed and carries out interception of the enemy's radio conversations and D/Fing of his radio stations.

The efforts of intelligence collection are aimed at the detection of the enemy's grouping and the nature of his operations on the axis of the division's main strike. If necessary, divisional (regimental) headquarters send out new reconnaissance subunits and make more precise the tasks of operating subunits.

197. On getting close to the enemy, the forward detachment, acting boldly and resolutely, destroys the forward subunits, seizes the designated line swiftly, and holds it until the arrival of the main forces, hindering the enemy's deployment by fire from all its weapons.

On encountering superior enemy forces, the forward detachment goes over to the defense at the line it has reached, repels the enemy's strikes and contains his operations, depriving him of freedom of maneuver [illegible] or, on instructions from the divisional commanding officer, withdraws on an axis which will ensure the delivery of a strike by the main forces against the enemy's flanks and rear, holding him up at advantageous lines by active operations.

198. On the basis of information from air, ground, and other types of intelligence collection, and of the fighting of forward detachments and advance guards, the divisional commanding officer clarifies the situation and makes a final decision about joining battle and the deployment of the main forces; in it he specifies the enemy grouping to be routed, the objectives to be attacked by nuclear and chemical weapons; the axis of the main strike, how the troops are to maneuver and the grouping of forces and weapons; the combat tasks of subordinate units and the main problems concerning coordination; the measures to support flanks and the procedure for troop control.

Combat tasks are conveyed to units by the divisional commanding officer in the form of short combat instructions, which are given personnally, or through officers from his headquarters, and when a clash with the enemy has taken place - also by radio.

In the first place, tasks are given to missile units and to regiments operating on the axis of the main strike.

At the same time as combat tasks are given to units, the main problems of coordination are also indicated. In this connection, an indication is given above all of the objectives against which nuclear and air strikes are to be delivered and the times of these strikes, the procedure for the exploitation of the results of the strikes by troops, and the procedure for ensuring the deployment and supporting the attack by artillery units.

199. A meeting engagement starts with the combat of march security troops.

By attacking swiftly from the march, advance guards destroy the enemy's march security troops, break through to the main forces, and by resolute action contain them, thus ensuring the deployment and maneuver of the division's (regiment's) main forces.

If the enemy has been the first to deploy with superior forces, the advance guard halts the enemy's advance by active operations, and in cooperation with the forward detachment and neighboring advance guards ensures the deployment of the main forces. The operations of advance guards are supported by artillery and aircraft.

200. When a meeting engagement has been joined, the commanding officer of the leading regiment, together with the necessary number of officers, moves forward quickly, clarifies the situation, makes the final decision for a meeting engagement, sets combat tasks for subunits, directs the movement forward and deployment of battalions, and ensures that the advance guard's combat and the movement forward, deployment, and attack of the main forces are supported by artillery fire.

The commanding officer of the regiment which is moving behind the leading regiment, on receiving his combat task, immediately sends out reconnaissance troops and combat outposts on the axis of the offensive, makes a decision, sets tasks for subunits, and organizes their moving out to the deployment line.

The regimental commanding officer sets combat tasks for subunits in the form of short combat instructions, which are transmitted by radio, personally, and through officers from his headquarters. Coordination between subunits is organized during combat.

When a meeting engagement is joined, the divisional commanding officer moves forward to the advance guard which is operating on the main axis, clarifies his decision and the tasks given to units, coordinates the operations of advance guards, of the forward detachment, and of the main forces, supporting them by fire and air strikes, and makes a decision to land tactical airborne forces (if they are to be employed).

201. After landing, tactical airborne forces attack the enemy suddenly and resolutely from the rear or from the flank, disrupt his orderly deployment, and compel him to fight on an inverted front. In other cases, airborne forces, having occupied an advantageous line, hold up by their aggressive operations the approach of the enemy's reserves to the battlefield.

When airborne forces are landed with the aim of destroying nuclear weapons or control points by exploiting gaps in the enemy troop formation, they reach the designated objective swiftly and attack it.

The fire means of units and subunits which are moving up deliver strikes against the enemy, assisting airborne forces to fulfil their tasks successfully /2 or 3 words missing/.

202. The division's missile subunits occupy siting areas on an axis which will ensure the delivery of surprise strikes against enemy objectives in the greatest possible depth. After their tasks have been specified, missile subunits deliver strikes with missiles with nuclear, chemical, and conventional filler.

Artillery deploys from the march and, as batteries are ready, opens fire independently against the opposing enemy and at his approaching columns, destroys his tactical nuclear attack means, and neutralizes his artillery and mortars, thus providing support for the operations of advance guards and ensuring the deployment of units and subunits which are moving up. As the main forces approach and are deployed, artillery fire is put under centralized control.

During combat, artillery units (subunits) move behind the combat formations of motorized rifle and tank subunits in readiness to fire in support of their operations.

203. Aircraft must in the first place destroy the enemy's nuclear attack means, his tank units (subunits), and his artillery, thereby supporting the attack by the main forces. Aircraft deliver strikes against enemy columns moving up, his troops operating on the axis of the division's (regiment's) main strike, as well as against enemy troops threatening the flanks.

204. Antiaircraft weapons cover the main forces when they are deploying and attacking. The main efforts 4 or 5 words missing of subunits of missile troops, tank units (subunits), and of control points.

As success is achieved, the division's antiaircraft weapons move by batteries together with the units which are delivering the main strike.

Antiaircraft subunits of regiments are deployed and move in the combat formations of battalions, destroying from the march and at short halts the enemy's low-flying targets.

205. The division's (regiment's) main forces should approach the enemy and deploy from columns as swiftly as possible. Leading regiments, exploiting the fire strikes delivered against the enemy and the results of combat by forward detachments and advance guards, deploy quickly from march columns and attack the enemy from the march without waiting for the arrival of all the regiment's forces, and develop the attack swiftly throughout the entire depth of the combat task given them.

As a rule, the tank regiment of a motorized rifle division delivers strikes on the enveloping flank or on the main axis, splitting the enemy's grouping.

The tank battalion of a motorized rifle regiment usually operates on the main axis at full strength or together with motorized rifle battalions.

As a rule, motorized rifle subunits attack behind the tanks from armored personnel carriers, firing from the march. Motorized rifle subunits dismount when they come under strong enemy fire, and also when cooperating directly with tanks under conditions of bad visibility. In this event, the armored personnel carriers move in the gaps and on the flanks of the combat formation of their own subunits and support them with fire.

The enemy's open flanks, as well as the gaps in his battle formations, are used to deliver strikes with the aim of dismembering and destroying the enemy piecemeal.

Units advancing on the axis of the areas where airborne forces are operating, without involving themselves in prolonged combat with the enemy, move forward to join up with the airborne forces and, having brought them under their command, continue to wage combat operations together with them.

Any success achieved should be exploited boldly and unceasingly, the columns moving up from the depth and one's own reserves being used gradually to increase the strike until the enemy is completely destroyed, without giving him any opportunity to organize his defense and to regroup his

forces. Reserves are usually brought into combat from behind the flanks of the first echelon or into the gaps between units and subunits and are supported by concentrated fire from artillery and missiles and strikes by aircraft.

206. Enemy troops which appear on the flank or in the rear of a division (regiment) are attacked by artillery fire and destroyed by our strikes at their flanks and rear, or the enemy's attack is repulsed by units (subunits) specially assigned for this purpose. On the threatened /one line missing/ of the enemy, antitank weapons are moved out, and use is made of minefields and toxic substances.

Every commanding officer should know that when carrying out an enveloping movement, the enemy exposes his own flank and rear for a strike.

207. When the enemy attempts to go over to the defense, the main efforts of a division (regiment) are directed toward preventing him from occupying advantageous lines. With this aim, attacking units (subunits) destroy the enemy's covering force, strive to break into the line occupied by him from the march and to rout his forces which are going over to the defense by strikes at their flanks and rear.

As soon as the enemy starts to withdraw, the division (regiment) immediately begins to pursue him with its main forces along routes parallel to the enemy's axis of withdrawal, while some of the forces pursue him from the front, and strive to cut off one column from another and destroy them separately. In this, the tank regiment is usually employed to cut off the enemy on his lines of withdrawal and to deliver strikes against his flanks and rear.

208. In cases when the enemy has forestalled the division (regiment) in the deployment of the main forces and in going over to the offensive, it is essential that part of the forces should occupy an advantageous line, contain the enemy's operations by fire from all weapons, disrupt his combat formations, and rout him by a strike at his flanks and rear by the main forces from the depth.

209. When a meeting engagement is joined, rear units (subunits) move to their appointed areas, set up medical points and organize assembly points for damaged vehicles. Regimental medical points are usually set up in the rear of the combat formations of regiments, while the independent medical-sanitary battalion is deployed in the rear of the division's main forces.

4. The Tank Division (Regiment) in a Meeting Engagement

210. In a meeting engagement a tank division can fully exploit its inherent capability of great mobility to maneuver boldly and swiftly, while its great striking and firepower enable it to rout superior enemy forces in a meeting engagement. It is capable of more effective use of the nuclear strikes of its own troops and of carrying out tasks in depth at a fast rate even under conditions of radioactive contamination of the terrain.

Having contained the enemy from the front with part of his forces, as a rule the tank division delivers the main strike against the flank and rear of the enemy's main grouping. Under favorable conditions a tank division can rout a superior enemy piecemeal by a blow, delivered also from the front, which will split him apart. When operating against the enemy's motorized and infantry units, it can deliver a strike simultaneously from the front and at the flanks of his main grouping and destroy the opposing enemy completely.

211. Tank regiments are employed on the axis of the main strike, while a motorized rifle regiment is usually employed for containing the enemy from the front, thereby creating favorable conditions for tank regiments to maneuver and to strike at the flanks and rear.

The heavy tank regiment can operate as part of the first echelon against the enemy's main tank grouping, as well as in the reserve to increase efforts as the meeting engagement develops or to rout enemy tank units delivering strikes at the division's flank and rear. In the cases when the enemy forestalls the division in deploying, as a rule, the heavy tank regiment is employed as part of the first echelon against the enemy's main tank forces.

Delivering a strike at the enemy's flank and rear with its main forces, the regiment contains the enemy's grouping from the front with part of its forces. The regiment's motorized rifle subunits on armored personnel carriers advance behind the tanks in the gaps or can be employed to secure the flanks.

212. The highly mobile and swift operations of a tank division (regiment) in a meeting engagement make it necessary to conduct reconnaissance on a wider front and in great depth. With the aim of increasing the efforts of reconnaissance, when a meeting engagement is joined, reconnaissance subunits may be reinforced by tanks of the line (lineynyy tank), or tank subunits are sent out independently for reconnaissance.

213. On encountering the enemy, advance guards deploy from the march and, under cover of fire from tanks, destroy the enemy's march security troops, break through boldly to his main forces, and attack them resolutely.

The main forces of the tank division (regiment) reform at great speed from march columns into combat formation and, exploiting the results of nuclear and air strikes, the striking and firepower of tanks, as well as the operations of the forward detachment and of advance guards, attack the enemy resolutely from the march, without waiting for the arrival and deployment of all forces.

Destroying the enemy from the march by fire and exploiting the gaps torn in his battle formation, the regiments of the first echelon break through swiftly into the enemy's depth, delivering strikes at his flanks and rear, split him up and rout him piecemeal, thus preventing him from going over to the defense.

As soon as the enemy begins to withdraw, the division immediately starts to pursue him. Tank regiments move swiftly onto the enemy lines of withdrawal and, delivering strikes at the flank and rear of the withdrawing grouping, in cooperation with units advancing from the front, encircle and destroy it. The motorized rifle regiment usually pursues the enemy from the front.

Operating on the axis where the enemy's nuclear attack weapons are located, tank subunits move forward swiftly with the aim of seizing or destroying them.

On encountering an enemy who is moving up on various axes, the tank division first of all destroys his tank grouping. The forward movement of the enemy's other grouping is delayed by strikes by aircraft, missiles, and artillery with the use of chemical ammunition, as well as by the operations of units and subunits specially assigned for this purpose.

214. As the units of the first echelon advance, the division's (regiment's) reserve moves behind them in readiness to go into combat to exploit success. If necessary, tank subunits may be brought in to support the operations of the division's (regiment's) first echelon by direct laying of fire and by fire from concealed positions.

The commitment to combat of the reserve is supported by artillery fire and aircraft strikes, as well as by aggressive operations and by fire from neighboring subunits. The deployment line for committing the reserve to battle is usually fixed by the senior commander.

215. As a rule, the commanding officer of a tank division controls his units in a meeting engagement from the forward command post, which is in a tank or in an armored personnel carrier.

The commanding officer of a tank regiment directs the fighting of his subunits from a tank, moving directly behind the combat formations of battalions operating on the main axis.

CHAPTER 9

An Offensive Against a Defending Enemy

1. General Principles

216. The offensive as the main type of combat operations is of decisive significance in the achievement of victory over the enemy.

The aim of an offensive is to rout the defending enemy completely in a short time and to seize important areas. This is achieved by destroying his main groupings with nuclear weapons, by powerful fire from all weapons, and by swift strikes by tanks and motorized rifle troops into a great depth in collaboration with aircraft and airborne forces.

217. An offensive against a defending enemy starts with a breakthrough with the aim of breaking into his defense and creating conditions for carrying on mobile and swift operations into the depth of his positions.

Attack is conducted at a fast rate, along axes, with extensive use of turning and outflanking movements, ceaselessly by day and night.

An offensive at a fast rate is achieved: by conducting vigorous and deep reconnaissance; by reliable neutralization of the enemy's defense and quick exploitation of the effects of fire strikes, especially strikes by nuclear weapons; by swift advance by the troops through gaps and breaks in the enemy's defense; by seizing defense positions and forcing water obstacles from the march, by decisive annihilation of counterattacking enemy reserves, by crossing or making detours around contaminated zones and obstacles quickly; by firm and flexible troop control.

The axes of an offensive are determined by the combat plan, the areas in which nuclear weapons are to be employed, weakly held sectors in the enemy's defense, and features of the terrain. They must lead to the most vulnerable points in the enemy's defense and facilitate fire and tactical collaboration between the advancing troops for delivering strikes against the enemy from various directions.

218. A division (regiment) attacks a defending enemy from the march or from a position occupied by it, where it is in direct contact with the enemy. The main method is an offensive from the march.

An offensive from the march against a prepared enemy defense position is usually carried out by moving forward from an assembly area; and against an enemy who has gone over hurriedly to the defense, as a rule it is launched when combat operations develop in the depth.

An offensive by troops in direct contact with the enemy is usually carried out from a position [one line missing].

219. The motorized rifle (tank) division, and the motorized rifle (tank) regiment may attack in the first echelon or they may constitute the combined-arms reserve (second echelon).

A division of the first echelon attacks in a zone 15 km wide, and a regiment in a zone up to 7 km wide. As a rule, a division starts to break through a prepared defense in two sectors, concentrating its main efforts on the main one of them. A regiment breaks through the defense in one sector. At the same time as the attacking troops break through swiftly into the depth, the breakthrough sectors are extended in the direction of the flanks in order to create a continuous zone for the division's offensive. When the breakthrough of the tactical depth of the enemy's defense has been completed, the offensive usually develops along axes.

A division (regiment) attacking in the depth of the enemy's defense in isolation from other large units (units) is usually not assigned a zone, but is given an axis for the offensive.

220. The combat task for the division (regiment) is determined in conformity with the plan of the operation (battle), the extent to which nuclear and other weapons have destroyed the enemy, the forces and nature of his defense, the composition of the division (regiment), the terrain and other conditions in the situation.

A division of the first echelon is given an immediate task, an axis for its further offensive, and the task for the

day. In addition, the commanding officer is given a brief for the next twenty-four hours [two lines missing].

The division's immediate task may be to rout the enemy in the zone of the offensive, to break through his defense throughout the whole depth of the division of the first echelon, and to seize an area which would facilitate further operations under favorable conditions.

The division's task for the day may be to seize a position or an area at a depth of 80 to 100 km.

A regiment of the first echelon is given immediate and subsequent tasks and an axis for its further offensive.

The regiment's immediate task consists of destroying the first echelon of the enemy division in the regiment's zone of the offensive. In some cases, this task may coincide with the division's immediate task.

The regiment's subsequent task may be to rout the enemy's reserves and to break through his defense throughout the whole depth of the formation of the division of the first echelon.

If the offensive is conducted without the employment of nuclear weapons, the division's (regiment's) tasks will usually be smaller in depth.

The combined-arms reserve (second echelon) of the division (regiment) is given movement routes and possible tasks. The tasks are specified before commitment to combat.

221. As a rule, the combat formation of a division (regiment) in an offensive consists of one echelon with the assignment of a strong combined-arms reserve. The first echelon must be capable of breaking through the enemy's defense and developing the offensive at a fast rate. In the division's reserve there may be one or two regiments, and in a regiment's reserve — a battalion.

When breaking through a prepared defense echeloned in depth, the combat formation of a division (regiment) may consist of two echelons.

222. On a division's main axis of the offensive, tactical airborne forces may be landed from helicopters in

order to surround the enemy, seize and hold areas (lines) on the movement routes of reserves, crossings and suitable sectors for forcing water obstacles, and also to destroy the enemy's nuclear attack weapons.

The airborne forces are usually composed of a reinforced motorized rifle battalion taken from the division's reserve (second echelon).

To land the airborne forces, the necessary number of helicopters are assigned to the division.

The preparation and planning of the airborne forces' landing is carried out directly by the divisional commanding officer and his staff.

The departure area for take-off is selected in places which have cover against enemy observation and which ensure that the distance between them and the landing area can be covered in the shortest possible time. In selecting the flight path to the landing area, the terrain, the nature of the enemy's defense, and the extent to which it is to be neutralized are taken into consideration.

With the aim of supporting the flight, the landing, and the combat operations of the airborne forces, provision is made to neutralize the enemy's fire weapons, especially his antiaircraft weapons, and a procedure is also laid down for artillery and aerial support for the airborne forces.

To call for fire support and for correcting fire, an artillery officer with means of communication must be with the commanding officer of the airborne forces.

223. Before the troops go over to the offensive, preparation fire is laid down, and during the offensive the troops are given fire support. The basic elements of preparation fire and fire support are nuclear strikes in conjunction with the employment of chemical weapons and with fire from artillery and tanks and strikes by aircraft.

For participation in preparation fire and fire support, besides tactical missiles and organic and attached artillery of the division, tanks from the division's reserve (second echelon) as well as tactical missiles and artillery of divisions in the army's reserve (second echelon)

are detailed. On behalf of the division, some fire tasks may be carried out by army fire weapons.

Tactical missile subunits are not included in the divisional artillery group.

On the decision of the divisional commanding officer, a divisional artillery group and regimental artillery groups may be formed from the complement of organic and attached artillery of the division. The artillery and tanks brought in from the reserve (second echelons) operate as component parts of the artillery groups.

Part of the artillery subunits are assigned by the regimental commanding officer to support battalions of the first echelon; during the offensive they may be subordinated again to battalion commanding officers.

224. Preparation fire for the offensive is laid down throughout the whole depth of the enemy's defense, and the main efforts are concentrated on destroying the most important objectives.

The duration and pattern of preparation fire for the offensive are determined by the nature of the enemy's defense, the extent to which it is essential to neutralize and destroy the enemy's fire weapons and personnel, and the quantity of nuclear munitions and conventional weapons of destruction available.

In planning preparation fire, it is essential to avoid routine in its pattern and duration.

Preparation fire for an offensive usually starts with a sudden and powerful nuclear strike, followed by fire onslaughts from artillery and from tanks which are detailed for firing from concealed positions and for direct-laying fire. In addition, nuclear strikes may be delivered in the middle and at the end of the preparation fire.

Nuclear strikes are employed to destroy the most important reliably reconnoitered objectives (targets) in the enemy's defense, taking into account the safe distance of one's own troops.

Fire weapons and personnel at centers of resistance and at strong points, artillery and mortars, radiotechnical

means and control points against which nuclear strikes are not delivered are destroyed and neutralized by fire onslaughts from artillery and tanks and by aerial strikes during the preparation fire for the offensive.

To destroy fire weapons and demolish defensive structures in the forward area and in the immediate depth, use is made, for direct-laying fire, of regimental and divisional artillery guns, of tanks, and also of antitank guided missiles.

225. Fire support for attacking troops is laid down throughout the whole depth of their combat task. The change from preparation fire to fire support must be carried out in a way imperceptible to the enemy and without any pause.

During preparation fire, tactical missiles are used to destroy the enemy's newly detected nuclear attack weapons, his reserves, and other important objectives.

Artillery and tanks neutralize and destroy the enemy in strong points which impede the advance of troops, his tanks, artillery, and antitank guided missiles, and they prevent the enemy from counterattacking and maneuvering and support the committing to combat of reserves (second echelons) and their operations in the depth of the enemy's defense.

Artillery and tanks from reserves (second echelons) usually support troop offensives to a depth of 3 to 5 km.

As a rule, support for the offensive of units (subunits) of the first echelon is provided by concentrated fire and by fire against individual targets. On the main axis of the offensive, when a sufficient quantity of artillery is available, successive concentration of fire may be used.

226. The fire of tank units (subunits) which are brought in for firing from concealed firing positions during the period of preparation fire and of fire support of the offensive, is planned by the commander of the divisional artillery and by the commanding officers of artillery groups. In addition, the commander of the divisional artillery ensures that the fire is tied in topographically, determines the procedure for directing fire, fixes the quantity of ammunition to be used and the procedure for bringing it up, and also organizes checks to see that tank units (subunits) are ready to fulfil their fire tasks.

Firing positions for tank units (subunits) are prepared in advance in the area of the artillery firing positions, on the axes of the impending tank operations. As a rule, at the firing positions tanks are disposed by companies.

227. Aircraft support the division during the offensive in accordance with the plan of the senior commander. In some cases, fighter-bomber aircraft may be detailed to support the division's offensive. Aircraft participate in the preparation fire and fire support for the offensive, provide cover for the troops against attacks from the air, support the landings of airborne forces and their operations in the enemy's rear area, and also conduct aerial reconnaissance.

During preparation fire for the offensive, aircraft destroy and neutralize the enemy's missile weapons and artillery [one or two words missing] his reserves, control points, and radiotechnical means.

During fire support of the offensive, fighter-bombers deliver strikes on behalf of the division against small mobile targets in the immediate depth of the enemy's defense, against newly detected nuclear attack weapons, and against reserves. Aircraft strikes must coincide, as regards time and place, with troop operations, especially at decisive moments of combat.

228. The antiair defense of a division (regiment) is organized throughout the whole depth of the combat task and is carried out continuously by its antiaircraft weapons within the overall antiair defense system of the army.

The main efforts of antiaircraft weapons are concentrated on covering the division's (regiment's) main forces during the preparation for and during the offensive.

The grouping of antiaircraft weapons must ensure the destruction of the air enemy on the approaches to the troops which are being covered.

229. The main engineer support tasks for the division's (regiment's) offensive are: engineer reconnaissance of the enemy's defense, of obstacles and of the terrain in the zone of the offensive; equipping of areas occupied by troops before the offensive, and implementation of camouflage measures; preparation of routes for the moving up of troops to the enemy's defense position and support of maneuver during the offensive; making passages through artificial obstacles and obstructions;

equipping and maintaining crossings when water obstacles are forced; setting up obstacles when repelling enemy counter-attacks and strengthening positions.

230. To enable the divisional (regimental) commanding officer to make a decision, reconnaissance must establish the following: the grouping, composition, and combat effectiveness of the enemy's troops, and the nature of his operations, especially of his tank units; the places where nuclear weapons are disposed; the firing positions of artillery and mortars and the system of fire, especially antitank fire; the forward edge and the formation of the enemy's defense, its engineer preparation and system of obstacles; the extent to which the terrain is passable, and the nature of the water obstacles.

Aerial and radiotechnical reconnaissance, especially systematic aerial photography, are of great significance for revealing the enemy's defense.

Immediately before the offensive is launched, with the aim of ensuring that preparation fire is not directed at positions from which the enemy has withdrawn or which are weakly held, reconnaissance in force is carried out.

231. Before the offensive is launched, the division's (regiment's) rear units and subunits replenish their stocks of mobile supplies, evacuate the sick and wounded from units and medical posts, carry out technical servicing of combat and transport vehicles, and also evacuate equipment which has not been repaired.

During the offensive, stocks of materiel are replenished in such a way that the troops have all that they need for the next twenty-four hours of combat. During the offensive, rear units (subunits) are deployed partially or completely in places indicated by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer.

The division's medical battalion and the independent medical detachments of the army move behind the division's combat formations and, when necessary, are deployed successively in designated areas. Regimental medical posts provide medical first aid directly in the combat formations of regiments.

2. Offensive Against a Prepared Enemy Defensive Position from the March

Offensive by a Motorized Rifle Division (Regiment)

232. An offensive from the march from an assembly area is the best way of achieving secrecy of preparation, operational surprise, and minimum vulnerability of troops to weapons of mass destruction; at the same time it calls for thorough planning of preparation fire, of the moving up of units (subunits) to the enemy's defense position, and their timely deployment for going over to the attack in an orderly and swift way.

The division (regiment) moves up from the assembly area in a broad zone and on as many routes as possible, usually under cover of troops who are in direct contact with the enemy.

233. The assembly area of the division is designated at such a distance from the enemy that the troops are concealed from his ground radar reconnaissance and are out of range of his tactical missiles and long-range artillery, while the time needed for moving up to the forward edge is as short as possible. To deceive the enemy and to avoid creating a pattern, the assembly area of the division may be designated at different distances from the forward edge and to the side of the sector where the breakthrough is to take place.

In the assembly area, troops are disposed in dispersed order along the movement routes in the grouping laid down for the offensive. Units are disposed by battalions with their attached reinforcements.

The antiaircraft weapons of the division (regiment) are located in firing positions, ready to repel enemy air attacks.

In disposing the troops, the greatest possible use is made of the protective and camouflage features of the terrain, and shelters are arranged for personnel, control points, combat equipment, transport, and materiel.

234. To ensure the orderly moving up of troops and the simultaneous beginning of the attack, the following are laid down: movement routes, a departure line, control and deployment lines for units (subunits), and also an attack line. To protect one's own troops from nuclear strikes which

are being delivered against strong points in the enemy's main defense line, a line is fixed which units (subunits) must not cross before delivery of the nuclear strikes.

For each regiment, one or two routes are usually prepared up to the first deployment line. Subsequently, the number of movement routes is increased with the aim of ensuring the the deployment of subunits into approach march and combat formations. In addition, in the division one or two alternate routes and lateral roads are prepared.

The line for deployment into columns of battalions is usually fixed at 8 to 12 km, on the assumption that units of the first echelon will reach it and deploy after preparation fire has started. The line for deploying into columns of companies can be 4 to 6 km away.

The attack line is designated as near as possible to the forward edge of the enemy's defense, behind natural features which provide cover against antitank and machine gun fire.

235. In preparing for an offensive, reconnaissance of the enemy is carried out through the whole depth of the division's (regiment's) combat task. With this aim, after receiving the task the headquarters immediately organizes reconnaissance of the enemy by technical means and by observation and also issues instructions to conduct reconnaissance of movement routes, deployment lines, and areas of firing positions. At the same time, it obtains from the headquarters of the large unit (unit) operating ahead details about the enemy and about obstacles, and coordinates with the headquarters concerned the procedure for conducting reconnaissance until the offensive starts.

Aerial reconnaissance is conducted to a depth of 200 to 250 km. It must reveal above all the enemy's defense in the immediate depth. With this aim, vertical and oblique aerial photography is carried out. The interpreted photographs are sent immediately to the divisional commanding officer, and subsequently maps with the details filled in are delivered to battalion (batalon i divizion) commanding officers.

To conduct reconnaissance for the attacking troops, use is made of the forces and means of large units (units) which are in direct contact with the enemy. On instructions from army headquarters, they may carry out reconnaissance in force during which the divisional commanding officer and regimental commanding officers, with officers from their headquarters and from the arms of troops, study the enemy, especially his system of fire, in the zone of the impending offensive, from observation posts.

236. The procedure followed by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer and his staff in planning an offensive depends on the amount of time available and on the situation.

All measures in planning an offensive must be implemented secretly and quickly, taking into account that as much time as possible should be allotted to prepare the troops for the impending operations.

On receiving the combat task, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer clarifies it, gives instructions to his staff regarding the organizing of reconnaissance and regarding the necessary preliminary instructions for the preparation of troops for the attack, and also about the procedure for reconnoitering.

After assessing the situation, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer studies the enemy, especially throughout the depth of the immediate task, the support available for, and the combat capabilities of, his own troops, the radiation and chemical situation, and the nature of the terrain; he determines the tasks for fire weapons, and for motorized rifle and tank units (subunits), as well as the procedure for moving out of the assembly area, and he then makes a decision and sets the tasks. When necessary, to clarify individual matters, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer calls in his chief of staff and the commanders of the arms of troops and services.

237. When setting the combat tasks, the divisional commanding officer lays down in his order the following:

— for regiments of the first echelon — their reinforcements, the immediate and subsequent tasks, the axes of further advance, the movement routes from the assembly area, the procedure for deployment, and the attack line;

— for the combined-arms reserve (second echelon) — the possible combat tasks and the procedure for moving;

— for tactical missiles, artillery, and tanks, brought in for firing from concealed firing positions — the duration and pattern of preparation fire, the tasks during preparation fire and during fire support for the offensive, the composition of artillery groups, the procedure for moving out to firing positions, the time by which they are to be

occupied, and the time by which troops are to be ready to open fire;

— for the antitank reserve and the mobile obstacle detachment — the composition, the procedure for moving, and possible deployment lines;

— for antiaircraft units — the tasks for covering troops while they are moving up to the attack line and during the offensive.

In addition, the divisional commanding officer defines more precisely the targets for strikes by aircraft operating in the division's zone of the offensive, and sets them further tasks.

For the tactical airborne forces, if they are being used, he lays down the composition, the combat task, the time when the forces are to be ready for take-off and the procedure for landing, the measures to be taken to support the landing and the operations of the airborne forces, and the communications procedure.

238. When setting combat tasks, the regimental commanding officer lays down in the combat the following:

— for battalions of the first echelon — their reinforcements, the immediate and subsequent tasks, the axes of further advance, the movement routes from the assembly area, the procedure for deployment, and the attack line;

— for the tank battalion — the task and the allocation of tank subunits for the direct support of motorized rifle battalions;

— for the combined-arms reserve (second echelon) — the composition, the possible combat tasks, and the procedure for moving;

— for attached and regimental artillery — the tasks for the period of preparation fire and fire support for the offensive, the number of guns and combat vehicles with antitank guided missiles brought in for direct-laying fire, the firing positions, the time and procedure for occupying them, and also the time when the troops are to be ready to open fire;

— for the antitank reserve — the composition, the procedure for moving, and possible deployment lines.

239. Immediately after the combat order has been issued, collaboration is organized in the division in regard to tasks, axes, lines, and timing, and in the regiment — in regard to tasks, lines, and timing. It is worked out in greater detail throughout the depth of the immediate task.

While reconnoitering is going on, the tasks of units (subunits) and the procedure for collaboration are clarified on the ground.

In planning collaboration, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer pays the main attention to coordinating the operations of units (subunits) with nuclear strikes, with artillery fire, and with strikes by aircraft, and he lays down the sequence of operations when attacking the enemy forward edge and seizing important objectives in the depth of his defense, the measures for supporting the committing to combat of the combined-arms reserve (second echelon), as well as the measures for repelling the enemy's counterattacks, and he also establishes the general reference points and signals.

In coordinating the operations of units (subunits) when they are moving up to the forward edge of the enemy's defense, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer specifies the lines for deployment into columns of battalions and into columns of companies, and the attack line.

If airborne forces are operating on the division's (regiment's) axis of the offensive, the procedure to be followed by the advancing troops for joining up with the airborne forces, the signals for mutual recognition and target designation, and the radio procedure for communications with them, are laid down.

240. To make more precise the decision made and the tasks of units (subunits), and to coordinate the procedure for collaboration, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer carries out a reconnoitering on the basis of a plan worked out by his staff.

During the reconnoitering, the following are made more precise:

- the forward edge and the approaches to it, the strong points, the disposition of fire weapons, particularly antitank ones, gaps in the enemy's defense, and the presence of obstacles in front of the forward edge;

- the axis for the main strike, the sectors where a breakthrough is to be made and the axes on which regiments are to advance, the combat tasks of units (subunits);

- the objectives against which nuclear strikes are to be delivered and targets which are to be dealt with by chemical weapons, artillery fire, tanks, and strikes by aircraft;

- the firing positions for tactical missiles, artillery, and tanks, and the time and procedure for occupying them;

- the procedure for troop collaboration, including collaboration with units (subunits) in direct contact with the enemy, and cooperation with adjacent troops;

- the movement routes, the control lines, the deployment and safe distance lines, the attack line, and the number and location of passages through obstacles;

- the places where control points are to be deployed.

With the aim of accelerating the work on the ground, reconnoitering in a division (regiment) may be done by several reconnoitering groups.

The main work in making more precise the combat tasks and the procedure for collaboration between troops is done by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer assisted by the commanding officers of regiments (battalions) and the commanders of the arms of troops.

Elaboration of movement routes, determination of measures for their preparation, and the organization of commandant's services and of traffic control are carried out by independent reconnoitering groups.

After the divisional (regimental) commanding officer has carried out his reconnoitering the commanders of the arms of troops and services and also the commanding officer of the artillery group carry out work on the ground with their subordinate commanding officers and commanders during which they make more precise the procedure for the combat employment of units (subunits), arms of troops, and special troops in fulfilling their tasks.

241. On the basis of the commanding officer's decision, divisional (regimental) headquarters, together with the commanders of the arms of troops and services, works out the combat order, instructions for the support of troops, the plan for moving up units (subunits) to the attack line, and it conveys these to the troops who will carry them out; it organizes the commandant's service and traffic control, sets up the division's forward command post (regiment's command post), organizes control, and also checks on the preparation of the troops and the engineer equipping of movement routes and firing positions.

242. In organizing the commandant's services, divisional (regimental) headquarters designates route commandants and allots them the necessary forces and means for traffic control.

Traffic control posts are set up in advance at departure points, at control lines and lines for deployment into columns of battalions and of companies, as well as at the line which the troops must not cross before the delivery of nuclear strikes.

243. Engineer support for the offensive is organized by the unit engineer on the basis of the divisional (regimental) commanding officer's decision. In doing this, the main efforts are directed toward ensuring a fast rate for the offensive, the moving of troops to the attack line, the equipping of the firing positions of the artillery's tactical missiles, and the making of passages through obstacles.

To move units and subunits to the assault line, use is made of existing roads, while cross-country routes are also prepared. The preparation of routes is carried out by the forces and means of the division and by engineer-road subunits attached to it.

Passages through one's own obstacles are made before the offensive is launched, and through the enemy's obstacles — as a rule during the fire preparation by means of explosives,

and by the forces and means of the division's reinforcements together with subunits of engineer troops of the units which are in direct contact with the enemy. Subunits of engineer troops ensure the movement of troops through the passages.

When the attack starts, in addition, passages through mine fields are made by tanks equipped with devices for clearing mine fields.

For engineer support of the offensive, as a rule, motorized rifle and tank units and subunits are reinforced by subunits of engineer troops.

244. While troops are moving to the forward edge, the divisional commanding officer controls them from the forward command post, and the regimental commanding officer — from the command post, which are set up on the division's (regiment's) main axis. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer arrives with a group of staff officers at these posts not later than the time at which the troops begin to move forward from the assembly area.

Control of troops when they are moving up is carried out by wire and mobile means of communication, and from the beginning of fire preparation — also by radio.

The division's command post moves behind the troops of the first echelon in readiness to take over control; when the units of the first echelon deploy, it occupies a position which has been prepared for it in advance.

The regimental deputy commanding officer leads the regimental column moving up.

Zero hour "Ch" for the attack, as well as the time for the delivery of nuclear strikes, are communicated by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer to commanding officers of subordinate units (subunits) through the headquarters in the assembly area 4 to 5 hours before the troops start to move up.

245. Troops begin to move up from the assembly area at the appointed time upon receipt of a signal from the divisional commanding officer.

The first to move out are tactical missiles and long-range artillery, and also antiaircraft weapons detailed to cover them. Then the rest of the artillery and the tanks, brought in

for firing from concealed firing positions, move out with a view to being ready to open fire 1½ to 2 hours before the attack starts ("H-hour"). Ammunition for artillery and tanks for preparation fire and fire support is delivered to firing positions in advance.

Regiments of the first echelon start to move out in columns of regiments or columns of battalions. Battalions move together with the reinforcements attached to them. Antiaircraft subunits of the regiment are distributed among the columns. As they approach the enemy's defense, the regiments (battalions) of the first echelon deploy successively into columns of battalions and columns of companies on the lines indicated to them.

The chemical defense company moves behind the division's first echelon in readiness to deploy in order to provide full special treatment to subunits which have been exposed to radioactive and chemical contamination.

Engineer subunits detailed to support the moving of troops to the attack line move out in advance to sectors of the routes which are difficult to cross, and assist the columns to pass through them.

The combined-arms reserve (second echelon) of the regiment moves 8 to 12 km behind the battalions of the first echelon, and the combined-arms reserve (second echelon) of the division — 15 to 20 km behind the first echelon. In some cases, the combined-arms reserve (second echelon) of a division may start to move out of the assembly area when the first echelon begins the attack.

The first echelon of the division's (regiment's) rear area troops moves behind the first echelon of the troops moving out.

The second echelon of rear area troops starts to move out of the assembly area at the time laid down.

246. If the enemy carries out counter preparation while the troops are moving up to the attack line, the divisional commanding officer, by using the artillery, tactical missiles, and tanks for firing from concealed firing positions, which had moved out earlier, takes steps to neutralize the enemy's fire weapons.

Units (subunits) disperse and speed up their movement; if necessary, they make detours around contaminated zones and areas which are under heavy bombardment.

When the subunits of the first echelon lose their combat effectiveness, they are replaced by the combined-arms reserve (second echelon) of the regiment. Simultaneously with this, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer takes measures to eliminate the effects of nuclear attack.

When conducting counterpreparation against the enemy, on instructions from the army commander, preparation fire may start before the appointed time.

247. Preparation fire starts on a signal from the divisional commanding officer simultaneously on all sectors where the breakthrough is to be made.

During preparation fire the divisional (regimental) commanding officer observes the results of nuclear strikes and the fire of artillery and tanks, and also observes the operations of aircraft. At the same time the ground zeros (centers) and heights of nuclear strikes are determined, and the tasks of fire weapons for the period of preparation fire and fire support, especially in neutralizing newly detected sites of missiles, guns, mortars, and other weapons, are made more precise. When subunits of the first echelon move up to the objectives to be attacked, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer gives the signal to commence fire support.

248. During preparation fire, tank and motorized rifle subunits continue to move to the enemy's defense, deploying successively on the lines designated for them. On approaching the attack line, subunits adopt combat formation, quickly clarify the objectives to be attacked and the passages through mine fields, and on a signal from the divisional (regimental) commanding officer, go over to the attack.

The signal to start the movement to the attack is given by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer on the basis of the zero hour ("H-hour") and the distance of the attack line, and in such a way that the regiments of the first echelon attack the enemy simultaneously.

Tank and motorized rifle subunits, supported by artillery fire and firing on the move, break swiftly into the forward edge of the enemy's defense, destroy his personnel and fire weapons, and

continue the advance without stopping. The troops which are in direct contact with the enemy destroy and neutralize his fire weapons primarily on the flanks of the attacking troops.

On axes where strong points in the forward edge have been reliably neutralized, motorized rifle subunits attack in combat formation from armored personnel carriers immediately behind the tanks.

On those axes where the enemy is putting up resistance, especially with antitank weapons, motorized rifle subunits attack on foot. The armored personnel carriers continue to move forward and support the attack of their subunits with machine gun fire.

249. During the breakthrough of the enemy's defense, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer makes the tasks of the troops more precise, concentrating the main efforts on axes where there have been successes.

The offensive of the troops is supported by concentrated fire from artillery and tanks firing from concealed firing positions and by direct-laying fire.

When enemy nuclear and chemical attack weapons are detected, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer takes steps for their immediate destruction.

Units (subunits) of the first echelon, supported by fire from all weapons and exploiting gaps and breaks, boldly make detours around strong points and centers of resistance, destroy the enemy in them by blows against the flanks and rear, and move on swiftly into the depth of the enemy's defense. On those axes where the enemy does not put up any organized resistance, motorized rifle subunits move forward in armored personnel carriers behind the tanks. During the offensive, close support tanks may become separated from motorized rifle subunits, without loss of collaboration and communications with them.

Troops of the first echelon, while developing the attack in depth, at the same time extend the sectors where the breakthrough has been made in the direction of the flanks, destroying the enemy throughout the whole zone of the division's offensive.

To develop the breakthrough at a fast rate, special importance attaches to resolute operations by the tank regiment, which must break through boldly into the depth and destroy the defending enemy and his reserves by daring blows from the march.

Aircraft support the attacking troops, neutralizing and destroying the enemy's nuclear attack weapons, his artillery, and his immediate reserves, as well as other important targets. When tactical airborne forces are dropped, aircraft cover their flight to the area where they are to be dropped and support their combat operations.

250. Obstacles and natural obstructions detected during the breakthrough are circumvented. If it is impossible to do this, passages through mine fields are made by tanks equipped with devices to clear mine fields, as well as by subunits of engineer troops advancing in the combat formations of battalions of the first echelon.

Zones of radioactive contamination are crossed on axes which will ensure the fulfilment of the combat task and the exposure of personnel to the smallest dose of radiation.

251. The fire resources of a division (regiment) are relocated during the attack in such a way that they are able to provide support for the troops to attack at a fast rate.

Tactical missiles change location by batteries. In some cases, a missile unit may change the location of all its component parts at the same time.

The moving of artillery to new firing positions is carried out in such a way that a large part of it (two thirds) can support the attacking troops with fire.

The moving of antiaircraft units is carried out successively by batteries or groups of batteries in such a way that continuous cover for the attacking troops can be provided. Antiaircraft self-propelled mounts move directly in troop combat formations, destroying the enemy in the air from the march or from short halts.

252. During the offensive, divisional (regimental) headquarters must make more precise the tasks of reconnaissance, must know the location and state of its own troops and control them firmly in combat in accordance with the commanding officer's instructions, must not allow units (subunits) to be cut off /one line missing/ maneuver by forces and weapons for the swift advance of troops and the routing of the enemy.

During the offensive the divisional (regimental) commanding officer moves behind the first echelon in such a

way that he is able to exercise his personal influence constantly on the operations of units (subunits), especially on the axis of the main strike.

253. If the enemy delivers nuclear strikes, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer takes decisive measures to continue the offensive by troops of the first echelon, forming composite detachments if necessary or committing to combat the combined-arms reserve (second echelon).

At the same time, the divisional (regimental commanding officer takes steps to reestablish the combat effectiveness of units (subunits) which have been subjected to nuclear attack; he moves the antitank reserve and the mobile obstacle detachment to the threatened axis.

254. During the offensive, reconnaissance elements, as they move forward, pinpoint the areas where the enemy's nuclear attack weapons, strong points, and centers of defense are situated, the nature of the operations of enemy reserves, the locations of control points and radioelectronic means, and the presence and nature of obstacles and natural obstructions.

Reconnaissance groups are usually dispatched to carry out reconnaissance of the enemy.

Deep reconnaissance groups dropped in the rear are given specific tasks for further reconnaissance of the enemy's missile units and reserves.

The division's radio reconnaissance subunits operate directly behind the combat formations of units of the first echelon. They carry out reconnaissance at short halts by intercepting radio transmissions, and also by D/F'ing.

Aerial reconnaissance establishes the existence of enemy defense lines in the depth, watches for reserves moving up, and determines the disposition areas of the firing positions of missile units and artillery, as well as the locations of control points and other objectives.

Divisional headquarters and the headquarters of a regiment receive aerial reconnaissance reports directly from airborne aircraft.

255. The routing of the enemy reserves which are moving up for counterattack is achieved by strikes with nuclear and chemical weapons, by concentrated artillery fire, and direct-laying fire from tanks, as well as by strikes by aircraft, and is completed by a swift strike by the advancing units (subunits) against the counterattacking enemy at the same time as they are developing the offensive in depth.

In the event of a counterattack by powerful enemy forces, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer moves the antitank reserve, the mobile obstacle detachment, and part of

the forces of the first echelon onto the axis where his tanks are threatened. Units (subunits) which have been given the task of repelling the enemy deploy from the march on the indicated line and destroy the enemy by fire from all their weapons. Simultaneously with this, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer neutralizes and destroys the counterattacking enemy by powerful fire strikes, while the main forces deliver strikes against his flank and rear and continue the attack in depth.

256. During the development of the offensive, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer moves up the combined-arms reserve (second echelon) at a distance that will enable him to commit it to combat in time to build up the strike and develop the success of the first echelon. If necessary, part of the forces of the combined-arms reserve (second echelon) or all of them can be committed to rout a counterattacking enemy.

The combined-arms reserve (second echelon) is committed to combat in the gaps between or from behind the flanks of units (subunits) of the first echelon. It is essential to replace quickly reserves that have been expended.

The task is given to the combined-arms reserve (second echelon), or is made more precise, immediately before it is committed to combat. In doing this, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer indicates the nature of the enemy's operations, the deployment line and the time at which it is to be reached, the immediate task and the axis of further advance, what reinforcements there will be, and the procedure for collaboration with units of the first echelon and with adjacent troops.

The committing to combat of the combined-arms reserve (second echelon) is supported by artillery fire and strikes by aircraft, and is covered by antiaircraft weapons. Nuclear and chemical strikes may be delivered against the most important objectives. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer ensures the timely shifting of artillery fire to support the combined-arms reserve (second echelon).

257. On receiving his combat task, the commanding officer of the combined-arms reserve (second echelon) immediately organizes reconnaissance, communicates to commanding officers of subunits the latest information about the enemy and the positions of the troops operating ahead, indicates the deployment line and the time it is to be reached, the immediate task and the axis for further offensive, and the procedure for collaboration between the regiment's subunits, with adjacent troops, and with the artillery.

The combined-arms reserve (second echelon) moves up to the deployment line in dispersed order and at great speed. On approaching the deployment line, subunits of the first echelon deploy into combat formation and, supported by fire from all weapons, attack the enemy from the march or continue to move in approach march formation, with close support tanks ahead of them.

258. During the completion of the breakthrough of the enemy's defense, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer makes more precise the task of units (subunits) or sets new ones, directing their efforts to the rapid development of success in depth and in the directions of the flanks. If necessary, forces and weapons are regrouped on the axis where the greatest success has been attained.

To seize important positions and targets in the depth and crossings over water obstacles, as well as to fulfil other tasks, the divisional commanding officer, and sometimes also the regimental commanding officer, sends out a forward detachment. It is formed of the regiment (battalion) of the first echelon which has achieved the greatest success or of one in the combined-arms reserve. The regiment (battalion) assigned to form the forward detachment is reinforced by artillery, and subunits of engineer troops with crossing equipment, while the motorized rifle battalion is, in addition, also reinforced by tanks.

The divisional (regimental) commanding officer indicates to the forward detachment what its composition will be, the axis for its operations, its task and the time by which it is to be fulfilled, and also the way in which it will be supported by aircraft and artillery.

259. The commanding officer of the unit (subunit) assigned to form the forward detachment, on receiving his task, sends out reconnaissance forces, determines the procedure for moving the detachment and the composition of march security, sets tasks to subunits, and organizes collaboration.

In carrying out its task, the forward detachment pushes on resolutely into the depth, without getting involved in fighting to take separate strong points, and from the march seizes the indicated position (objective) and holds it until it is reached by the division's (regiment's) main forces.

260. A swift and deep breakthrough by the attacking troops may create favorable conditions for surrounding the enemy. The division usually carries out an encircling operation in collaboration with other large units (units) and with airborne forces by moving its units (subunits) onto the flanks and rear of the enemy and cutting his routes of withdrawal. On the axis / one line missing / the offensive until the immediate task has been completed.

The destruction of a surrounded enemy is achieved by coordinated strikes by the attacking troops with the aim of splitting him up and annihilating him piecemeal. The surrounded enemy is destroyed by nuclear and chemical weapons, by fire from artillery and tanks, and strikes by aircraft. The areas in which nuclear and chemical weapons are to be used must be known to the attacking troops.

Units advancing toward each other must know the axis of each other's operations, the lines where they are to meet, the boundaries of artillery fire, the prearranged signals for meeting, and the signals for ceasing fire. In addition, they are duty bound to mark clearly the positions of units and subunits for their own aircraft.

Attempts by the enemy to break out of encirclement must be countered by massed artillery fire, aircraft strikes, and the employment of nuclear and chemical weapons against groupings which are preparing the break out, by setting up obstacles and maneuvering reserves toward the axes of the breakthrough, with the aim of routing the troops which are breaking out by strikes at their flanks and rear, or by blocking their route.

261. In cases where the enemy's defense is laid out on the basis of a plan to hold up the attacking troops from the front with small forces, while the main forces are to be used to deliver counterattacks from previously prepared lines in the depth of the defense, the destruction of the covering troops is accomplished by specially assigned units (subunits) which must destroy the covering troops quickly, push on into the depth, and seize from the march the enemy's prepared lines for deploying to counterattack.

The main enemy grouping, while still in its disposition area, and especially when it is moving up to counterattack, is destroyed by nuclear and chemical weapons, fire from artillery, and strikes by aircraft. The division's main forces are employed to deliver a strike against the flank and rear of the enemy troops which are moving up to counterattack, and to develop the offensive in depth.

262. The reserve division (second echelon) of the army is committed to combat from the march mainly in gaps in the combat formations of the attacking troops. The division moves up to the commitment line along as many routes as possible, in a grouping which will ensure rapid deployment and minimum vulnerability to enemy nuclear and aircraft strikes, with reconnaissance subunits and movement protection detachments in front of it. If necessary, to seize an advantageous line for deployment, forward detachments or advance guards are sent forward, and under their cover the artillery and tactical missile subunits deploy.

While the division is approaching the combat commitment line, the divisional commanding officer communicates to the units the latest information about the enemy and the position of the troops operating ahead, and makes more precise the tasks of units of the first echelon and the procedure to be followed by them in deploying and collaborating.

The division moves up to the combat commitment line in march formation. On approaching the combat commitment line, units of the first echelon deploy into combat formation or continue to move in approach march formation.

To support the commitment of the division to combat, on instructions from the senior commander, artillery and aircraft are brought in, and strikes by nuclear weapons may be delivered against the most important enemy objectives.

Offensive by a Tank Division (Regiment)

263. The tank division, which has great fire and striking power and great mobility, is capable of breaking swiftly through the enemy's defense from the march, of developing an offensive resolutely at a fast rate, and of conducting combat operations successfully when cut off from the army's main forces.

The tank division may attack in the first echelon or it may constitute the army's reserve (second echelon). When attacking a prepared enemy defense in the first echelon, it is employed on the main axis to destroy the enemy's main grouping.

264. The tank division in the first echelon is given its immediate task, the axis for further advance, and the task for the day in seizing an area (line) up to 100km in depth. In addition, the tank division's commanding officer is briefed on the possible tasks for the division during the next two to three days of combat operations.

The immediate task of the tank division is usually to break through the enemy's defense throughout the whole depth of a division of the first echelon and to destroy his immediate reserves.

The immediate task of the tank regiment of the first echelon is to destroy the units in the first echelon of the enemy division operating in its zone of attack and to break through the main position in the defense. In some cases, this task may coincide with the division's immediate task.

The tank regiment's subsequent task may be to break through the defense throughout the whole depth of a division of the first echelon and to destroy the enemy's divisional reserves in collaboration with adjacent troops.

The general reserve (second echelon) of the tank division (regiment) is given a disposition area, a time, movement routes, and possible combat tasks.

265. The combat formation of the tank division (regiment) on the offensive usually consists of one echelon with the assignment of a strong reserve.

As a rule, the first echelon in the combat formation of the tank division (regiment) consists of tank regiments (battalions) reinforced with motorized rifle subunits.

During the breakthrough of the enemy's defense, subunits of the motorized rifle regiment are attached to tank regiments of the first echelon. If in the division's zone of offensive there are stretches of terrain and water obstacles which tanks would find difficulty in crossing, the motorized rifle regiment may advance in the first echelon.

The heavy tank regiment [3 — 4 words missing] in the reserve of the division for [3 — 4 words missing] in combat with tank [3 — 4 words missing] in the depth of his defense [3 — 4 words missing] for firing with [3 — 4 words missing]. In individual cases [3 — 4 words missing] strengthened defense [3 — 4 words missing] operate in the first [3 — 4 words missing].

266. In preparation for [3 — 4 words missing] division is located [3 — 4 words missing] area, which, as [3 — 4 words missing] side of the axis of [3 — 4 words missing] operations.

In the assembly area, the division (regiment) is deployed in a dispersed manner, and the regiments (battalions) are arranged along the movement routes and at the side of them in a grouping planned for the offensive. The troops make the maximum use of the protective features of the terrain and equip various shelters. Engineer preparation in the assembly area should be carried out if possible before the arrival in it of units of the division.

While the division (regiment) is in this area, special attention is paid to ensure the concealment of the dispositions of units (subunits) and to camouflaging the tanks against aerial reconnaissance and enemy agents, as well as against the enemy's radiotechnical means. The movement of all types of transport must be severely restricted.

267. The division (regiment) moves out of the assembly area on a wide zone and secretly. Tank battalions move out mainly offroads along cross-country routes.

With the aim of ensuring an orderly moving of the division (regiment) to the sector where it is to break through, its timely deployment into combat formation and the achievement of a concerted attack, cross-country routes are staked out, and the departure line, control lines, and deployment lines for units (subunits), and also the attack line, are fixed.

268. Reconnaissance of the enemy is conducted throughout the whole depth of the tank division's (regiment's) combat task. Special attention is paid by reconnaissance to the timely detection of the enemy's antitank defense system, of the areas where his tank reserves are situated, and the axes on which they will operate, and also to determining the nature of the terrain in the division's (regiment's) zone of the offensive and whether there are any antitank obstacles. With this aim, after receiving the task, headquarters immediately organizes reconnaissance of the enemy by technical means and by observation and issues instructions to conduct reconnaissance of movement routes, deployment lines, and areas for firing positions. Simultaneously with this, it receives information about the enemy and about obstacles from the headquarters of the large

unit (unit) operating ahead, coordinates with it the procedure for conducting reconnaissance until the offensive starts, and also puts in a request to higher headquarters for aerial reconnaissance.

269. On receiving the combat task, the commanding officer of the tank division (regiment) makes a decision, sets tasks to units (subunits), and organizes collaboration.

As a rule, the making of a decision, the setting of tasks for the troops, and the organizing of collaboration are done on a map and then made more precise during reconnaissance on the ground.

In making a decision, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer makes a specially thorough study of the enemy's antitank defense system at the forward edge and in the depth, of the disposition of his tank reserves and the possible axes on which they will operate, of the passability of the terrain, and of the presence of obstacles and natural obstructions.

In setting tasks, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer lays down in his combat order the following:

— for regiments (battalions) of the first echelon—the reinforcement weapons, the immediate and subsequent tasks, the axes for further advance, the routes for moving, the procedure for deployment, and the attack line;

— for the general reserve (second echelon)—the possible combat tasks and movement routes, the procedure for bringing in the division's reserve (second echelon) for firing from concealed firing positions, what rifle subunits are to be used to prepare and deliver ammunition to tanks, the quantity of ammunition to be expended, and the procedure for accumulating stocks of it at firing positions;

— for tactical missiles and artillery—the duration and pattern of preparation fire, the tasks during preparation fire and during fire support of the offensive, the time at which firing positions are to be occupied, and the time at which troops must be ready to open fire;

— for antiaircraft units (subunits)—the tasks for covering troops when they are moving up from the assembly area, when they are at deployment lines and during the offensive, the firing positions, and the time at which they are to be occupied.

In addition, the divisional commanding officer makes more precise the objectives for strikes by aircraft assigned for support, and sets them additional tasks for destroying the enemy and conducting aerial reconnaissance.

The time at which nuclear strikes are to be delivered and "H-hour" are communicated by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer to commanding officers of units (subunits) through his staff in the assembly area four to five hours before the troops start to move up.

270. Collaboration in the tank division is organized in regard to tasks, axes, lines, and timing, and in a regiment— in regard to tasks, lines, and timing. It is organized in greater detail throughout the depth of the immediate task.

Collaboration is organized in the form of short instructions on matters that were not dealt with when the tasks were set.

In planning collaboration, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer is obliged to:

— indicate at what time and against what objectives nuclear and chemical strikes are to be delivered, the safe distance lines, and the ways in which units (subunits) are to operate, with the aim of rapid exploitation of the results of the employment of nuclear and chemical weapons;

— coordinate the operations of units (subunits) between themselves and with adjacent troops in regard to lines and axes when attacking the enemy's forward edge and developing the fight in the depth of his defense;

— determine the methods of making passages through obstacles and the order in which subunits are to cross them;

— specify the procedure for the moving up and deployment of units (subunits) and coordinate their operations with troops who are in direct contact with the enemy;

— determine the procedure for the operations of units (subunits) if the enemy counterattacks;

— fix the general reference points and signals for collaboration.

In addition, the divisional commanding officer determines the procedure for transferring command of the motorized rifleunits attached to tank regiments of the first echelon, and for the further employment of the motorized rifle regiment.

271. To make more precise the decision made, the tasks of units (subunits), and collaboration, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer usually carries out a reconnoitering during which he determines the following:

- the contour of the forward edge, the strong points, the disposition of antitank weapons and obstacles, the gaps in the enemy's defense, the existence of sectors of terrain difficult to cross in front of the forward edge and in the depth of the defense;
- the axis for the main strike, the sectors where breakthroughs are to be made and the axes on which the regiments will advance, the combat tasks of units (subunits);
- the enemy objectives against which it is planned to use nuclear and chemical weapons, fire from artillery and tanks, and strikes by aircraft;
- the firing positions of tactical missiles, artillery, and tanks detailed to fire from concealed firing positions, and of antiaircraft units (subunits), and the time and procedure for moving them to the firing positions;
- the procedure for collaboration of units (subunits) among themselves and with troops who are in direct contact with the enemy;
- the places where and the time when passages through obstacles are to be made, the ways in which they are to be marked, and the procedure for crossing the obstacles;
- the movement routes, the control lines, the deployment lines, and the attack line;
- the places where control points are to be set up.

272. Divisional (regimental) headquarters, together with commanders of the arms of troops and the services works out the combat order, instructions for the support of troops, and the plan for moving units (subunits) to the assault line, and it conveys these to the troops who will carry them out, organizes commandant's service and traffic control, sets up the forward command post of the division (command post of the

regiment), organizes control, and also checks on the preparation of the troops and the engineer equipping of movement routes and firing positions.

In organizing the commandant's service, divisional (regimental) headquarters appoints commandants of routes and assigns the necessary forces and weapons.

Traffic control posts are set up in advance at departure positions, control lines, and at lines where deployment into columns of battalions and columns of companies is to take place, and also on the attack line.

Subunits of engineer troops with mechanical equipment and prime movers are sent forward in advance to sectors of terrain which are difficult to cross.

273. In organizing engineer support for an offensive by a tank division (regiment), the main attention is paid to supporting the moving up of units and subunits to the attack line, to the crossing of obstacles by tanks, and to ensuring advance at a fast rate.

To move up a tank division from the assembly area, besides using the existing roads, as many cross-country routes as possible are staked out and crossings over obstacles are constructed. Usually not less than two movement routes are prepared for each regiment of the first echelon, and also one or two reserve routes per division and lateral roads.

Tanks cross mine fields through passages made by subunits of engineer troops, and also make use of their own equipment for mine clearance.

In forcing water obstacles from the march in the depth of the enemy's defense, tank units and subunits cross over captured bridges, through fords, submerged, and on crossing equipment.

For engineer support of the offensive, as a rule, tank units and subunits are reinforced with subunits of engineer troops.

274. When the troops are moving up to the forward edge, the divisional commanding officer controls them from the forward command post, and the commanding officer of a regiment — from the command post, both of which are set up on the division's main axis. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer with a group of officers from his staff

arrives at the indicated posts by the time the troops begin to move up from the assembly area.

The division's command post moves with the troops of the first echelon in readiness to take over control. When the units of the first echelon deploy, it takes up a position which has been equipped for it in advance.

When the troops move forward to the attack line, they are lead by the deputy regimental commanding officer.

275. The tank division (regiment) starts to move from the assembly area to the attack line on the instructions (signal) of the divisional (regimental) commanding officer and its move is made secretly, at great speeds and in a grouping which will ensure speedy deployment and orderly shift to the attack from the march, and also minimum vulnerability to enemy nuclear strikes.

Missile subunits, artillery, and tanks brought in to fire from concealed firing positions, as well as some of the antiaircraft units, take up their firing positions in such a manner that they will be ready to open fire and cover the advancing units of the division 1.5 to 2 hours before the attack is launched ("H"- hour).

As a rule, the moving up and occupation of the firing positions is carried out at night with the help of night vision equipment or under conditions of limited visibility with observance of measures for camouflage.

Regiments of the first echelon of the tank division move out of the assembly area in columns of battalions or columns of regiments, with march protection detachments on each of the routes.

The general reserve (second echelon) of the division (if it is not brought in to fire from concealed firing positions) moves up along several routes at a distance of 15 to 20 km behind the regiments of the first echelon.

276. Before the tank division goes over to the offensive, preparation fire is laid down during which special attention is paid to neutralizing the enemy's system of antitank defense and, in the first place, to destroying his antitank guided missiles.

Preparation fire for the offensive usually begins with a surprise nuclear strike of high yield, followed by shelling by tanks firing from concealed firing positions and by artillery.

Nuclear strikes are delivered mainly against the enemy's nuclear attack weapons, against his most important defense centers, and against his tank reserves.

Artillery and tanks firing from concealed firing positions destroy and neutralize the enemy's tanks, artillery, antitank weapons, and personnel in strong points.

Aircraft deliver strikes against objectives in the depth of the enemy's defense which are not destroyed by nuclear weapons and artillery fire.

To annihilate fire weapons and destroy defensive structures in the forward area and in the immediate depth, extensive use is made of tanks and antitank guided missiles for direct-laying fire.

The organic and attached artillery of the division is usually attached to regiments of the first echelon. Part of the artillery, mainly long-range weapons, remains at the disposal of the divisional commanding officer.

When divisional artillery gets considerable reinforcements for the period of preparation fire, artillery groups are formed.

Fire support for the offensive is carried out by aerial strikes and fire from tanks and artillery throughout the whole depth of the division's combat task.

Artillery and tanks neutralize and destroy the surviving and newly detected antitank weapons, artillery, and tanks of the enemy, prevent the enemy from counterattacking, and support the commitment to combat of the reserves (second echelons) and their operations in the depth of the enemy's defense. Tanks firing from concealed firing positions support the offensive up to a depth of 3 to 5 km. To destroy reserves deploying for a counterattack, antitank guided missiles, and separate strong points, extensive use is made of concentrated fire by tank companies and battalions of the first echelon and of the reserves at long range (three to five km).

Firing positions for tanks brought in to fire from concealed firing positions are selected near the approach routes in such a way that the tank units (subunits), after carrying out their fire tasks, should be able to take their place in the combat formation of the division (regiment) at the proper time. The necessary quantity of ammunition is brought up in advance to the firing positions of tanks, while motorized rifle subunits are detailed for the task of preparing and passing the ammunition from the ammunition stocks on the ground to the tanks.

During fire support, aircraft deliver strikes against mobile and static targets in the immediate depth and against newly detected nuclear attack weapons and reserves of the enemy.

277. During fire support, tank units (subunits) of the first echelon move up to the attack line, deploy into combat formation, and on a signal from the divisional (regimental) commanding officer, go over to the attack. When approaching the attack line, commanding officers of subunits specify the targets to be attacked and the passages through obstacles.

When the attacking subunits reach the attack line, tanks and artillery detailed for direct-laying fire increase the weight of their fire.

At the same time, the subunits in direct contact with the enemy employ all their fire weapons to destroy the enemy's detected antitank guided missiles, his entrenched tanks, and antitank guns.

Tank subunits and the motorized rifle subunits attached to them, supported by all forms of fire and by aerial strikes, and firing from tanks and with small arms, break swiftly into the forward edge of the enemy's defense, destroy him, and move on without stopping.

278. Continuing the offensive, tank subunits destroy the surviving fire weapons and personnel in the enemy strong points by firing and delivering strikes at them from the march. Against antitank guided missiles, entrenched tanks, and guns, use is made of concentrated fire from tank platoons and companies.

Strong points which hold up the advance of subunits of the first echelon are neutralized by fire from tanks and artillery, are blinded by smoke, are circumvented, and are destroyed by strikes against their flanks and rear delivered by subunits assigned for this purpose from the reserves or second echelons.

279. During the breakthrough of the enemy's defense, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer concentrates his main efforts on the axes on which the greatest success has been achieved, striving to ensure a swift advance by the troops into the depth.

Units (subunits) of the first echelon, while developing the offensive into the depth, at the same time extend sectors of the breakthrough toward the flanks, cut off the enemy's lines of withdrawal, and, in collaboration with adjacent troops, destroy the enemy throughout the whole zone of the division's offensive by strikes at his flanks and rear.

For the swift crossing of areas subjected to nuclear strikes and of areas in which the enemy is not putting up any organized resistance, tank subunits make extensive use of approach march formation.

280. Counterattacking units (subunits) of the enemy are neutralized by aircraft strikes, by concentrated fire from tanks and artillery, and are destroyed by an attack from the march. The main forces advance resolutely into the depth with the aim of reaching the flank and rear of the enemy's main grouping and routing it.

In repelling a counterattack (counterstrike) delivered by superior enemy forces, the tank division's commanding officer dispatches onto an advantageous line a heavy tank regiment and antitank weapons and, employing strikes by nuclear and chemical weapons and fire from tanks and artillery, inflicts defeat on the counterattacking enemy and then completes his rout with a strike by the main forces.

281. During the offensive, all commanding officers and headquarters must constantly conduct reconnaissance of the enemy, must know the position and state of their own troops, must control their troops firmly in combat without allowing units (subunits) to lose contact with the enemy, must maneuver their forces and weapons quickly, and exploit any success gained for a swift advance by the troops.

During the offensive, the tank division's (regiment's) commanding officer moves behind the first echelon in such a way that he is constantly in a position to exercise his personal influence on the operations of units (subunits), especially on the axis of the main strike.

282. During the offensive, reconnaissance detachments and groups penetrate boldly into the depth of the enemy's defense

and establish the places where his nuclear weapons, antitank weapons, and artillery are located, the approach of enemy tank reserves, his defensive lines in depth, and where obstacles and natural obstructions lie.

Deep reconnaissance groups, dropped in the rear, are given specific tasks for the reconnaissance of missile units and subunits, and also of reserves.

Radio reconnaissance subunits conduct reconnaissance on the move by intercepting radio transmissions and by D/F'ing from short halts.

Aerial reconnaissance clarifies the existence of enemy defensive positions in the depth, watches for reserves moving up, determines the disposition areas of the firing positions of missile units, and also the places where there are control points and other targets.

Divisional headquarters and regimental headquarters receive aerial reconnaissance intelligence directly from airborne aircraft.

283. The success gained by troops of the first echelon is followed up by concentrating fire against the most important enemy objectives, by the continuous advance of units (subunits) of the first echelon, and also by committing the general reserve (second echelon) to combat. The tank regiment (battalion) in the general reserve (second echelon) is usually committed to combat from the march into the gaps between or from behind the flanks of units (subunits) of the first echelon. Exhausted reserves are replaced quickly.

The committing to combat of the reserve (second echelon) is supported by all forms of fire and covered by antiaircraft weapons.

The reserve (second echelon) moves up to the combat commitment line in dispersed order at a fast speed. On approaching the combat commitment line, subunits, if necessary, deploy into combat formation and, supported by fire from all weapons, attack the enemy from the march and, in collaboration with subunits of the first echelon, destroy him and advance swiftly into the depth.

284. As a rule, zones of radioactive contamination are crossed by a tank division (regiment) without halting the offensive. Tank regiments cross contaminated zones by the shortest axes with the lowest level of radiation. The motorized rifle regiment makes detours around contaminated zones or crosses them behind the tank

regiments after a drop in the high levels of radiation. If the situation allows it, the tank division may make detours around zones of radioactive contamination with all its units.

285. During the development of the offensive, the tank division and tank regiments may send forward detachments to seize crossings over water obstacles, important lines and objectives, and also for rapid linking up with airborne forces. The forward detachment is formed of units (subunits) of the first echelon which have achieved the greatest success or of units (subunits) from the general reserve (second echelon). In expectation of having to force a water obstacle, a motorized rifle regiment may be detailed from the tank division to the forward detachment. Units (subunits) which are detached to operate as forward detachments are reinforced by artillery, antiaircraft subunits, and subunits of engineer troops.

Without becoming involved in the combat, forward detachments penetrate swiftly into the depth, seize the objectives (lines) indicated to them, and hold them until the main forces arrive.

286. After breaking through the enemy's defense, the tank division breaks away boldly from the main forces of the army and, making broad use of maneuver and not getting involved in protracted fighting for the capture of separate points of enemy resistance, develops success swiftly into the depth. Supported by aircraft and missile troops and collaborating with the airborne forces, it splits up the enemy groupings, routs his reserves in meeting engagements, prevents the enemy from setting up defense on intermediate lines, destroys his nuclear attack weapons, and disorganizes the work of his rear services.

When the tank division (regiment) is operating in isolation from the main forces of the army, special attention must be paid to securing the flanks and rear. With this aim, reconnaissance and protection on the flanks are reinforced, and echelon formation is adopted for the combat formations of units (subunits). The mobile obstacle detachment and reserves are pushed out to the threatened flank.

287. The tank division of the reserve (second echelon) of the army has the task of building up the strike and swiftly developing success to a great depth.

The division is committed to combat from the march into the gaps between large units of the first echelon or from

behind their flanks. The division moves up to the combat commitment line at great speed in march formation in a grouping which will ensure rapid deployment and the minimum vulnerability of the troops to enemy nuclear strikes, with reconnaissance subunits and movement protection detachments in front of it. If necessary, the division (regiment) may send out advance guards or forward detachments. To ensure secrecy and to achieve surprise in attack, the division moves up to the combat commitment line usually at night or under conditions of limited visibility with the use of night vision equipment and with the observance of camouflage measures.

Units of the first echelon of the division, on approaching the combat commitment line, adopt combat formation, destroy the opposing enemy from the march, and advance swiftly into the depth to carry out the tasks they have been set. If the enemy does not put up an organized resistance, the division is brought into the zone of the offensive in approach march formation or in columns.

For supporting the commitment of the division to combat, on instructions from the commanding officer [four words missing] aircraft and artillery are brought in, while nuclear strikes may be delivered and other means of mass destruction may be used against the enemy's most important objectives.

3. Offensive Against a Prepared Enemy Defensive Position When in Direct Contact with Him

288. An offensive against a prepared enemy defensive position when in direct contact with him is usually carried out by troops who have been on the defensive, after the necessary regrouping and occupation of a departure area.

When conditions are favorable for the concealed approach and deployment of troops in front of the forward edge, the offensive when in direct contact with the enemy can be started by troops moving into the departure area from the depth.

289. In attacking when in direct contact with the enemy, the division (regiment) is allotted a departure area which must ensure concealed disposition of the troops and steadiness on their part if the enemy goes over to the offensive. In the departure area the personnel, combat equipment, and transport must be in prepared shelters which provide protection against nuclear strikes and against fire from conventional weapons.

The departure area is prepared in keeping /one line missing/ with the plan worked out by the divisional (regimental) headquarters. The preparation of the departure area is carried out mainly at night in the guise of strengthening the defense. Objectives which are prepared and equipped during the night are thoroughly camouflaged before daylight.

When preparing a departure area, existing pits and other shelters, trenches and communication trenches are completed and new ones are dug, firing positions for tactical missiles, artillery, tanks, and antiaircraft weapons are equipped, assembly areas for tanks are prepared, structures are established for control points, the combat formations of troops are camouflaged against enemy ground and air observation, and roads and cross-country routes are prepared; sectors of terrain in the departure area are cleared of mines.

290. For the disposition of the tank regiment and tank battalions of motorized rifle regiments before the offensive, assembly areas are allotted at a distance of eight to twelve km from the forward edge, in such a way that the tanks are able to reach the attack line during the period of preparation fire. In the assembly area, the tank regiment (battalion) is disposed in dispersed order (by companies), and the tanks are in shelters and are thoroughly camouflaged.

291. As a rule, the division (regiment) moves into the departure area at night and secretly in accordance with a carefully worked out plan.

Newly arriving large units (units) move into the departure area at the same time as the troops previously operating in this area are relieved.

When occupying the departure area, the first to move up and deploy are tactical missiles and artillery brought in to destroy the enemy's nuclear attack weapons and to engage his artillery, as well as some of the antitank and antiaircraft weapons. Then the rest of the artillery and tanks which are taking part in the preparation fire move up. Simultaneously with this, communications, observation points and posts and also control points are deployed.

The rest of antiaircraft weapons move up in such a way that they can cover the main forces of the division (regiment) reliably while these are moving up and occupying the departure area.

Motorized rifle units (subunits) of the first echelon move into the departure area usually during the night before the offensive.

They move up subunits along roads and prepared cross-country routes. On approaching the line which is surveilled by the enemy's ground observation posts, motorized rifle subunits dismount in places where there is cover and move into the areas allocated to them by concealed routes, communication trenches, and trenches.

The combined-arms reserve (second echelon) moves up to its allocated disposition area during the night before the offensive, and sometimes after the offensive has been launched.

Tank units attacking in the first echelon, and close support tanks of motorized rifle subunits, usually occupy the assembly areas during the night before the offensive.

292. The work of the divisional (regimental) commanding officer in planning the offensive is usually carried out on the ground and must be completed before the troops move into the departure area.

On receiving the combat task, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer clarifies it and and gives directions to his staff regarding the organization of reconnaissance in the impending zone of the offensive and also regarding the necessary preliminary instructions for the preparation of troops for the offensive, the time when tasks are to be set, and the procedure for work on the ground.

When making a decision and setting tasks, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer, besides general problems, determines the departure areas for the offensive and the time when they are to be occupied, the assembly areas for tanks and the procedure for their advance to the attack line, the areas where the combined-arms reserve (second echelon), the antitank reserve, and the movement protection detachment are to be disposed, and the routes to be used by them in moving to the forward edge.

If the occupation of the departure area is to be preceded by regrouping and relief of troops, then the divisional (regimental) commanding officer gives instructions about the procedure for doing this.

293. In carrying out reconnoitering, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer determines the following: the forward edge and the approaches to it, and the strong points; the disposition of fire weapons, especially antitank weapons; the gaps in the enemy's combat formations, and whether there are obstacles in front of the forward edge; the axis of the main strike, the sectors where regiments of the first echelon are to break through the defense, the axis of attack of regiments (battalions) and their combat tasks; the enemy objectives against which nuclear strikes are to be delivered and against which chemical weapons, artillery fire, fire from tanks, and aircraft strikes are to be used; the departure areas for regiments (battalions) of the first echelon and the routes for moving to them; the assembly areas and deployment lines for the attack by tanks and the procedure to be followed by them in passing through the combat formations of motorized rifle subunits; the areas where reserves (second echelon) are to be disposed and the routes for their approach to the forward edge; the firing positions for tactical missiles, artillery, and tanks detached for firing from concealed firing positions; the procedure for collaboration between troops; the nature of the work to be done by engineers to complete the preparation of the departure area; the number of passages through obstacles and where they are to be made; the places where control points are to be set up.

In addition, the regimental commanding officer specifies the firing positions for guns and tanks detailed for direct-laying fire, and for the combat vehicles of antitank guided missiles.

294. The forward command post of the division is set up on the main axis of the offensive in a place from which the divisional commanding officer can personally observe the operations of the troops and direct them, while the command post of the division is set up behind the combat formations of the regiments of the first echelon.

The command post of a regiment is usually situated in the system of trenches and communication trenches, behind the combat formations of battalions of the first echelon.

295. When preparing for the offensive, troops occupying the departure area retain the previous routine in their conduct and in the working of communications and remain in readiness to repel possible strikes from the enemy on the ground and in the air.

Attempts by the enemy to establish the dispositions of the division (regiment) by reconnaissance in force are repelled by detached fire weapons of subunits of the first echelon and by part of the artillery.

If it is detected that the enemy has withdrawn his troops from the forward edge into the depth of his defense, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer immediately reports this to the commander of the army (commanding officer of the division) and moves forward part of his forces and weapons in pursuit of the enemy.

Armored personnel carriers of motorized rifle subunits of the first echelon are disposed in dispersed order in shelters on the axes on which their subunits are operating.

296. In occupying a departure area, the divisional commanding officer, on the basis of directions from the army commander, takes steps in case the enemy carries out counterpreparations, and possibly an offensive. With this aim, tasks are given to missiles, artillery, and aircraft to neutralize the enemy's fire weapons participating in the counterpreparation.

During the enemy's counterpreparation, the fire weapons and aircraft detailed for this task neutralize the enemy's guns, mortars, and other weapons participating in the counterpreparation; personnel, excluding observers and crews of fire weapons, remain in shelters in readiness to take their places immediately to repel the enemy's attacks. The enemy's offensive is repelled by all fire weapons.

After the enemy has carried out counterpreparation, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer clarifies the state of his troops and takes measures for the rapid restoration of the combat effectiveness and readiness of his troops for an offensive. If necessary, units (subunits) of the first echelon, which have suffered heavy losses, are replaced by the combined-arms reserve (second echelon).

In some cases, on instructions from the army commander, preparation fire and a transition to the offensive can be started immediately after the enemy begins counterpreparation.

297. In carrying out preparation fire for the offensive, nuclear strikes against the enemy first position are usually delivered with ammunition of low yield. The ground zeros of nuclear bursts are selected taking into account the safe distance of one's own troops. Targets in the enemy's forward edge are destroyed and neutralized by fire from artillery and tanks firing from concealed firing positions, and also by fire from guns and tanks detailed for direct-laying fire, and by antitank guided missiles.

For more certain destruction and neutralization of the enemy in the forward area and in the immediate depth, close support tanks of motorized rifle subunits are brought in. With this aim, they move up during the period of preparation fire to the line indicated to them and destroy the targets allocated to them by concentrated direct-laying fire from the spot.

298. During preparation fire, all commanding officers are at their control points and observe the results of the employment of nuclear weapons, of artillery fire, and of aircraft strikes and, if necessary, set additional tasks to fire weapons for the neutralization of objectives which have not been subjected to the effects of nuclear weapons; they also check on the readiness of units (subunits) for going over to the attack.

When nuclear strikes are delivered against the forward edge of the enemy's defense, subunits of the first echelon remain in shelters in readiness to go over to the attack quickly on receipt of a signal.

299. The order (signal) for starting the movement of tanks and motorized rifle subunits into the attack is given by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer on the basis of the time fixed for the attack and the distance of the tanks and motorized rifle subunits from the forward edge of the enemy's defense.

Having received the order (signal), a tank regiment (battalion) starts to move from the assembly area to the attack line. In approaching this line, the regiment (battalion) splits up successively into columns of companies (platoons), then deploys into combat formation and attacks the enemy from the march.

In those cases when tanks have been on the defensive in direct contact with the enemy, they move into the attack from the firing positions they have been occupying.

At the established hour ("H"-hour), the tanks and motorized rifle subunits, supported by artillery fire and aircraft strikes, break swiftly into the forward edge of the enemy's defense, destroy his personnel and fire weapons, and advance without stopping.

When the tanks and motorized rifle subunits start to move into the attack, guns detailed for direct-laying fire direct their fire at the forward edge of the enemy's defense, taking care not to hinder the movement of the attacking

subunits. A large part of the accompanying guns operate in the combat formations of motorized rifle subunits, and, by firing from short halts, support the attacking subunits.

Motorized rifle subunits usually attack on foot or from armored personnel carriers behind tanks, firing from the armored personnel carriers on the move.

4. An Offensive Against an Enemy Who Has Gone Over Hurriedly to the Defensive During Combat Operations

300. An offensive against an enemy who has gone over hurriedly to the defensive can take place when combat operations are developing in the depth, when the enemy will strive to delay the advance of our troops by going over to the defensive on prepared and advantageous lines.

A hurriedly occupied defense is characterized by the following: incomplete readiness, and as a result of this, decrease in stability, an inadequately organized system of fire, poor engineer preparation of positions, carelessly organized collaboration and lack of firmness in control, as well as poor mastery of the terrain.

The breakthrough of a hurriedly occupied enemy defense is carried out from the march. The attack by units of the first echelon is usually carried out independently as they approach the defense line.

301. The division (regiment) is given an immediate task, and an axis of further advance.

The immediate task of the division usually consists of destroying the main forces of the opposing enemy grouping and of breaking through the defense throughout the whole of its depth.

The immediate task of a regiment of the first echelon usually coincides in depth with the task of the division.

The division breaks through the enemy's hurriedly occupied defense on a wider front and with considerable gaps between the regiments of the first echelon.

The grouping of the division's (regiment's) forces and weapons is formed in conformity with the plan of impending operations during the approach to the enemy's defense. A large part of the forces and weapons is included in the composition of the first echelon. The tank regiment is employed

in the first echelon on the axis of the main strike with the aim of splitting the enemy's combat formation throughout the whole of its depth.

302. To disrupt an orderly occupation of the defensive position by the enemy, strikes by aircraft and artillery are made. Nuclear and chemical weapons are employed against the reserves moving up.

With the aim of seizing important objectives in the enemy's defense, and creating conditions for the main forces to go into combat from the march, the division and the regiment send out forward detachments and advance guards.

To prevent the orderly deployment of troops by the enemy when he is taking up a defense line and to disrupt control, tactical airborne forces are landed.

303. The main task of reconnaissance is to establish the composition and grouping of the defending enemy, the forward edge, the organization of the defense and of the system of fire, the presence of gaps and open flanks in his combat formations, the disposition areas of his reserves, and the location of obstacles.

Reconnaissance of the enemy is planned in advance and is conducted by reconnaissance detachments, deep reconnaissance groups, and also by reconnaissance groups from regiments of the first echelon.

Radio reconnaissance subunits operate on the main axis immediately behind the forward detachments and advance guards. They conduct reconnaissance on the move by intercepting radio transmissions and also by direction finding from short halts.

Aerial reconnaissance of the enemy is conducted mainly visually, the data being transmitted directly from from airborne aircraft.

304. The special feature in planning an offensive against an enemy who has gone over hurriedly to the defensive lies in the fact that the making of the decision, the setting of combat tasks, and the forming of a grouping to accomplish the breakthrough is done while moving up to the enemy's defense. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer makes the decision on the basis of data from reconnaissance before reaching the enemy's defense.

Tasks are given to units (subunits) in the form of short combat instructions conveyed by radio or through officers from headquarters. Simultaneously with the setting of tasks, instructions are given on matters concerning collaboration.

In setting combat tasks, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer lays down the following:

— for the forward detachment (advance guard) — the reinforcements, the axis of operations, the area (line) in the enemy's defense which must be seized and held until the division's (regiment's) main forces approach and deploy;

— for regiments (battalions) of the main forces — the reinforcements, the combat tasks, and the axis of further advance;

— for tactical missiles and artillery — the tasks for supporting the combat of forward detachments and advance guards, and also the tasks for the period of preparation fire and fire support for the offensive of the main forces.

During preparation fire and fire support, extensive use is made of tanks for concentrated direct-laying fire at long ranges.

305. The breakthrough of a hurriedly occupied enemy defense usually begins with fighting by the forward detachment and advance guards who, operating in a vigorous and bold way on a broad front, burst swiftly into the enemy's defense and break up his combat formations.

The forward detachment attacks the enemy from the march and, exploiting gaps and breaches, develops the offensive.

By decisive operations the advance guards destroy the enemy's covering subunits, seize the most important strong points and his centers of resistance, thereby ensuring the deployment of the division's (regiment's) main forces for launching an attack from the march and swiftly developing the offensive.

306. The divisional commanding officer and the commanding officers of regiments of the first echelon move behind the forward detachments and advance guards and on the basis of data from reconnaissance and of the fighting of the forward detachments and advance guards, specify their

tasks to units (subunits) of the first echelon, to tactical missiles, artillery, aircraft, and also the procedure for collaboration.

307. Tactical missiles, artillery, and tanks brought in for direct-laying fire advance at the head of the columns of main forces or along independent routes. As they deploy at firing positions, they support the fighting of the forward detachments (advance guards) and support the offensive from the march of units (subunits) of the first echelon. Artillery usually occupies firing positions near the movement routes.

Before the main forces go into the attack, preparation fire is carried out for a short time on the axis of operations of regiments of the first echelon. At the same time, aircraft deliver strikes, and on the main axis strikes are delivered by nuclear and chemical weapons.

During the preparation fire, the enemy's fire weapons, centers of resistance, and control points are neutralized and destroyed. Tanks and guns assigned for direct-laying fire first of all destroy his antitank weapons.

308. The division's (regiment's) main forces approach the attack line in columns and in approach march formation.

Regiments (battalions) of the first echelon, as they approach, deploy successively into combat formation and, exploiting the success of forward detachments and advance guards, and supported by fire from artillery, tanks, and aircraft strikes, attack the enemy swiftly. Motorized rifle subunits usually operate in armored personnel carriers together with tanks, dismounting on axes where the enemy is putting up strong fire resistance. Having burst into the enemy's defense, units (subunits) exploit open flanks and gaps in the enemy's combat formations, attack him resolutely on the flanks and in the rear, and break through his defense throughout its whole depth at a high speed.

When fighting in the depth, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer directs his main efforts toward breaking up the defending enemy and destroying him piecemeal.

The division's (regiment's) combined-arms reserve moves behind the first echelon in readiness to develop its success.

The enemy's reserves moving up for counterattack are destroyed by concentrated fire from artillery, tanks, aircraft,

and by resolute strikes from the march by units (subunits) of the first echelon. The antitank reserve and the mobile obstacle detachment are dispatched to the threatened axis.

When the enemy withdraws, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer immediately organizes his pursuit.

309. Control points of the division and of regiments move at the head of march columns, and by the time preparation fire begins, they deploy on the axes of the offensive of the main forces as close as possible to the combat formations of the first echelon. During combat, troops are controlled from mobile posts, and also by the use of helicopters specially equipped with means of communication.

310. If an attempt to break through a hurriedly occupied enemy defense from the march has failed, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer plans an offensive which involves a short period of preparation for an attack in the shape of a simultaneous strike by most of the forces of the division (regiment).

A breakthrough involving a short period of preparation for the attack may be carried out on the axis of previous operations, or the efforts may be switched to a new axis.

Units (subunits) which have made direct contact with the enemy consolidate the lines they have gained and take steps to repel possible enemy counterattacks.

311. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer carries out combat reconnaissance of the enemy's defense and specifies their combat tasks to units (subunits) and the procedure for collaboration between the units (subunits). Special attention is paid to the detection of objectives for neutralization and destruction by nuclear weapons, and by fire from artillery and tanks. All the work in preparing a breakthrough must be carried out in the shortest possible time.

A breakthrough of a hurriedly occupied defense involving a short period of preparation for the attack is usually carried out after powerful preparation fire, during which strikes with nuclear and chemical weapons may be delivered against targets in the enemy's defense.

Fire support for the offensive takes the form of concentrated fire by artillery and tanks from concealed firing positions, and also of aircraft strikes and direct-laying fire from tanks at long ranges.

Any success gained, even on a narrow front, is immediately exploited to develop the offensive in the direction of the flanks and for a swift breakthrough of the enemy's defense throughout its whole depth.

5. Forcing of Water Obstacles

312. The conduct of an offensive into great depth and at a fast rate often compels troops to force water obstacles.

The employment of nuclear weapons, the existence of amphibious vehicles and modern crossing equipment, as well as the capability of tanks to cross through deep fords and submerged, permit the forcing of water obstacles from the march at a fast rate.

When an attack is developed successfully, as a rule water obstacles are forced from the march on a broad front. If forcing from the march has failed, it is carried out after a short period of preparation.

313. Success in forcing from the march is achieved by the following ways:

— conducting reconnaissance on a broad front simultaneously at the water obstacle and on the opposite bank, and using various forces and means for it;

— making the decision in good time and planning the forcing before the troops approach the water obstacle;

— destroying the enemy by strikes with nuclear and chemical weapons and by fire from conventional weapons on the approaches to the water obstacle and on the opposite bank;

— thorough organization, surprise, and rapid forcing on a broad front, seizing the enemy's undamaged crossings, and also by swift development of the offensive on the opposite bank.

— timely moving up of crossing equipment to the water obstacle, rapid equipping of crossings, and skilful handling of crossing equipment;

— timely construction of passages through obstacles on the shore and in the water;

— reliable covering of one's own troops and crossing against enemy air strikes.

To force a water obstacle, it is advantageous to make use of sectors where the banks are accessible and where there is a valley providing good camouflage and facilitating rapidity of operations, and also those sectors where the enemy's defense is weakest.

314. Reconnaissance in expectation of a forcing operation must establish the following:

— the composition and nature of enemy operations on the approaches to the water obstacle; the formation of his defense on the opposite bank, the weakly manned sectors of defense, the disposition of his reserves, the existence of underwater and other obstacles, and also of contaminated sectors;

— the width, depth, the nature of the bottom and of the banks of the water obstacle, the presence of hydrotechnical structures;

— the condition of the existing crossings and whether there are fords, the most suitable sectors for tank crossings through deep fords and submerged, for equipping landing and ferry crossings, and also for laying bridges.

For the reconnaissance of crossings by tanks submerged and through deep fords, engineer scouts with special equipment are included in the composition of reconnaissance elements.

Aerial reconnaissance of the enemy at the water obstacle is carried out mainly visually, the data being transmitted direct from airborne aircraft.

315. When carrying out an offensive involving the forcing of a water obstacle, the division (regiment) may be set the same combat tasks in depth as when it is attacking under normal conditions.

The pattern of the division's (regiment's) combat formation for forcing depends on the plan of operations on the opposite bank, the extent to which the enemy is to be destroyed with nuclear and other weapons, and also on the availability of crossing equipment. The grouping of the division's (regiment's) forces and means for the forcing is formed during the approach to the water obstacle.

To forestall the enemy in reaching the water obstacle and seizing the crossing, the division and regiments of the first echelon send out forward detachments, and the division may, in addition, land tactical airborne forces. With the aim of destroying the enemy before the water obstacle and of supporting the rapid moving up of the main forces to the sectors where it is to be forced, regiments of the first echelon send out advance guards.

Forward detachments (advance guards) from regiments are usually detailed in the strength of a reinforced motorized rifle battalion.

316. When forcing an obstacle, the division (regiment) organizes landing, ferry and bridge crossings, crossings by tanks submerged, and crossings by fording. The number of crossings is determined by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer on the basis of the availability of crossing equipment, the nature of the water obstacle, and the procedure established for the crossing by the troops.

317. With the aim of ensuring that troops reach the water obstacle in an orderly way and of precluding congestion of troops, a commandant's service is organized at crossings; its main tasks are traffic control when the troops reach the crossings, checking that camouflage measures are observed in departure areas (embarkation places) and on the move, and maintaining the procedure laid down at the crossings.

To direct the crossing of troops on landing and ferry equipment and over bridges, crossing commandants are appointed from among commanding officers of subunits (units) of engineer troops which have equipped these crossings. On crossings for submerged tanks, commandants are appointed from among officers of units which are crossing.

318. The tasks of engineer support for the forcing of a water obstacle are the following: conducting engineer reconnaissance of the water obstacle; equipping, maintaining, and camouflaging the crossings and approach routes to them; making passages through obstacles in the water and on the banks; direct support of the crossings by troops; organization of a rescue and recovery service and protection of crossings from floating mines, as well as against enemy sabotage operations.

319. When planning the offensive, the decision to force a water obstacle from the march is made on the basis of reconnaissance data about the enemy and on the water obstacle and is made more precise when the forward detachments and advance guards begin to force the obstacle.

In setting combat tasks for the forcing of a water obstacle from the march, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer lays down the following:

— for the forward detachment (advance guard) — the reinforcements, the axis of operations, the sector where the obstacle is to be forced and the task on the opposite bank, the procedure for destroying the enemy in front of the water obstacle;

— for the tactical airborne forces — the combat task, the time at which the forces are to be ready and the procedure for landing, the measures to support the landing and the operations of the troops, the procedure for communications;

— for regiments (battalions) of the main forces — the sectors where the obstacle is to be forced and where the crossings are to be made, the tasks on the opposite bank, the reinforcements in crossing equipment, the procedure for arriving at the water obstacle;

— for tactical missiles and artillery — the tasks to support the fighting of forward detachments and advance guards, as well as the tasks during the preparation fire and fire support of troops when they are forcing the obstacle;

— for the combined-arms reserve — the time and procedure to move up to the water obstacle and to cross it, the possible tasks on the opposite bank;

— for antiaircraft units (subunits) — the procedure for covering troops while they are arriving at the water obstacle, while they are forcing it, and when they are on the opposite bank;

— for engineer units (subunits) — the tasks in preparing crossings and supporting the forcing of the water obstacle.

320. The forcing of the water obstacle is usually begun by the forward detachments and advance guards. Forward detachments and advance guards approach it swiftly. Exploiting the results of fire strikes and the operations of airborne forces, they force the water obstacle from the march, advance quickly into the depth, break up the enemy's combat formations, and destroy his troops piecemeal.

Tanks attached to forward detachments (advance guards) cross to the opposite bank behind motorized rifle subunits on tracked, floating ferries, or over captured crossings, which are held until the arrival of the division's (regiment's) main forces.

To support the forcing operation, the commanding officer of the forward detachment (advance guard) makes extensive use of guns, tanks, and antitank guided missiles for direct-laying fire.

The divisional commanding officer and commanding officers of regiments of the first echelon move behind the forward detachments (advance guards), and on the basis of the results obtained by them in forcing the water obstacle, make more precise the decision, the tasks of units (subunits), and the procedure for collaboration, and also direct the moving up of the first echelon and of the crossing equipment to sectors where the forcing is taking place.

321. Tactical missiles, artillery, and also tanks brought in for direct-laying fire at long ranges, move up independently behind the forward detachments (advance guards). As they approach and deploy at firing positions, they support the fighting of the forward detachments (advance guards) and neutralize and destroy the enemy in strong points in the sectors where the forcing is taking place, thereby ensuring the moving up and forcing of the water obstacle by units (subunits) of the first echelon from the march.

Aircraft strikes, as well as strikes by nuclear and chemical weapons, are delivered mainly against the enemy's reserves which are moving up for counterattacks.

322. The division's (regiment's) main forces move up swiftly to the water obstacle along as many routes as possible, and, exploiting the results of fire strikes and the operations of forward detachments and advance guards and covered by fire from artillery, tanks, and guns brought in for direct-laying fire, as well as by aircraft strikes, they force the water obstacle on a wide front from the march. Regiments (battalions) of the first echelon, without halting after the forcing and without waiting for all the forces to cross, swiftly develop the attack into the depth, delivering strikes simultaneously against the flank and rear of the defending enemy, with the aim of linking up the sectors in which the obstacle is being forced by regiments throughout the division's whole zone of offensive.

If necessary, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer maneuvers his troops to sectors where the forcing is proceeding most successfully, and also supports the units (subunits) attacking on the opposite bank with all the forces and resources at his command. On the flanks and on axes of possible enemy counterattacks, antitank weapons are brought up and artillery fire is prepared.

323. In those cases when the enemy's main forces are disposed in depth and are used to deliver counterattacks from previously prepared lines, the destruction of his subunits fighting defensively directly at the water obstacle is accomplished by the forward detachments and advance guards.

The enemy's main grouping is destroyed by heavy fire strikes in its disposition areas and when moving up for a counterattack, and is also attacked on its flanks and rear by the troops who have crossed.

324. Motorized rifle subunits and their reinforcements force the water obstacle in organic amphibious armored personnel carriers or in attached amphibious vehicles. At the same time, the obstacle is forced by tanks of the motorized rifle regiments, which cross through fords, on self-propelled, tracked [illegible] ferries, [illegible] and submerged.

The artillery attached to regiments, the antiaircraft subunits of regiments, and part of the division's antiaircraft weapons, cross to the opposite bank behind battalions of the first echelon, while divisional artillery and tactical missiles usually cross behind regiments of the first echelon. Tactical missiles cross by batteries in constant readiness to deliver strikes against the enemy.

The divisional (regimental) commanding officer moves to the opposite bank behind the first echelon.

325. Tank regiments of motorized rifle and tank divisions force the water obstacle by crossing through fords, including deep ones, on amphibious tracked [illegible] ferries [illegible], over bridges, and submerged. Reconnaissance of sectors suitable for tank crossings through fords and submerged is carried out by forces and means assigned for this purpose and included in the composition of reconnaissance groups, as well as by special patrols.

Tanks are prepared in advance for crossing submerged while they are approaching the water obstacle, and the preparations are completed at the places nearest to it which provide cover.

Tanks cross submerged on a wide front at several places, usually after the opposite bank has been captured and after thorough reconnaissance of the water obstacle. With this aim, tank regiments of the tank division are reinforced by subunits of the motorized rifle regiment.

Having crossed the water obstacle, tank subunits emerge on their allotted axes and fulfil the combat tasks which they have been given.

326. The combined-arms reserve of the regiment and of the division, before forcing the water obstacle, moves up closer to it, and crosses in a way which will enable it to enter into combat at the appropriate moment in order to exploit success on the opposite bank.

The combined-arms reserve crosses by using the existing crossings and on organic, amphibious armored personnel carriers.

The rear units and subunits of the division (regiment) cross to the opposite bank by echelons over bridges or on ferries. The first to cross are the regimental medical posts and the necessary transport with ammunition.

327. With the aim of protecting the troops from nuclear weapons while they are arriving at the water obstacle and while they are forcing it, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer must not permit congestion of units (subunits) while they are approaching the water obstacle and at the crossings, must select the sectors for battalions to make the crossing in a way that will ensure that two of them cannot be knocked out simultaneously by one nuclear burst of medium yield, and he must also take measures to move the troops forward rapidly after they have forced the water obstacle.

328. In organizing the forcing of a water obstacle in a short time, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer carries out a thorough reconnaissance of the enemy and of the water obstacle, sets or makes more precise the combat tasks of units (subunits), tactical missiles, artillery and tanks, organizes collaboration, carries out the necessary regrouping, moves crossing equipment up secretly to the sectors where crossings are to be made, and establishes the procedure for forcing the water obstacle.

The regrouping of troops must be simple, and as a rule is carried out at night or under other conditions of limited visibility. In the departure area, before the forcing takes place, the personnel, military equipment, transport, and crossing equipment are housed in shelters.

329. The forcing of the water obstacle is carried out on a wide front by all the forces of the first echelon and begins during preparation fire for the offensive, which must continue until the subunits which have crossed start to go over to the attack.

Subunits of the first echelon embark in self-propelled crossing equipment at places which provide concealment, and move up to the water obstacle during preparation fire under cover of the troops located on the bank.

The moving up starts in accordance with the time fixed to force the obstacle and the time required to cover the distance between the embarkation places and the water's edge.

Tanks equipped for crossing submerged move up on their allotted axes as the opposite bank is captured and as the crossings become ready.

330. The beginning of the forcing ("H"-hour) is considered to be the moment when subunits of the first echelon push off from their own bank.

Units (subunits) of the first echelon, exploiting the results of nuclear strikes, strikes by aircraft, and fire from all weapons, force the water obstacle swiftly and develop the offensive on the opposite bank without stopping.

Fire support starts when the first echelon goes over to the attack on the opposite bank. In forcing wide rivers, fire support starts from the moment units (subunits) of the first echelon push off from their own bank.

6. Special Features of an Offensive at Night

331. Extensive use should be made of night conditions to conduct offensive operations with decisive aims. A night offensive facilitates the delivery of surprise strikes and continuity of combat operations, and it also makes it more difficult for the enemy to take countermeasures.

A night offensive can start with a breakthrough of the enemy's defense, or it may follow as a development of daytime combat operations.

Success of combat operations at night depends on thorough planning and on the training of troops, and also on skilful handling of night vision devices and illumination equipment.

332. A breakthrough of the enemy's defense at night is planned in advance. Troops and headquarters must be as capable of conducting offensive operations at night as by day. A breakthrough at night will be planned more often when troops are in direct contact with the enemy.

In drawing up the combat formation of the division (regiment), forces and weapons are assigned for the first echelon in sufficient strength to ensure the fulfilment of the tasks set for the night without the combined reserve (second echelon) having to be committed to combat.

The tank regiment of the division is usually employed as part of the combined-arms reserve (second echelon) and is committed to combat at daybreak in order to develop the success achieved at night.

The tanks of motorized rifle regiments are attached to companies and operate in their combat formations.

Tactical airborne forces are landed in great depth and in such a way as to ensure that they link up with the attacking troops in the daytime.

In breaking through the enemy's defense at night, the division's (regiment's) combat task may be the same in depth as during an offensive by day. The troops are given lines which they must seize successively during the night.

The axes of the offensive should lie along terrain with the smallest possible number of natural obstructions, where there are reference points easily discernible in the dark, and should lead to the designated objectives by the shortest route.

333. In the decision of the divisional (regimental) commanding officer, in addition to the usual problems, there are laid down the following: measures to camouflage the troops from enemy observation by night vision equipment when moving them up to the forward edge of defense or when occupying the departure position for the offensive; measures to ensure that the offensive is not interrupted at daybreak, and also the procedure to provide illumination support.

Illumination support for the offensive by troops at night is primarily provided for objectives located in the depth. Illumination of targets in the immediate vicinity is carried out in a way that will not hinder the use of night vision equipment.

When planning illumination support, the following are normally envisaged: the illumination of targets for artillery and aircraft in the depth of the enemy's defense; the positioning of illuminated reference points (markers) to mark the axis of the offensive; light signals for mutual warning, for target designation, and for maintenance of collaboration, and also for marking the front line and lines reached; the blinding of enemy observation points and fire weapons and measures for combating his night vision equipment.

With the aim of maintaining secrecy of preparation and the achievement of surprise in the offensive, the routine system of illumination, of using night vision equipment, and of signalling resources should not be upset before the beginning of the attack.

334. As a rule, a breakthrough of the enemy defense at night is implemented after preparation fire. Strikes with nuclear weapons and aircraft are usually delivered against enemy objectives located in the depth. When nuclear weapons are used at night, consideration must be given to the blinding effects of light radiation.

During the preparation fire, artillery and tanks concentrate their fire against strong points in the forward edge and in the immediate depth of the enemy's defense on the axes of the offensive by regiments of the first echelon. Tanks and guns assigned for direct-laying fire, using night vision equipment, neutralize and destroy enemy fire weapons in the objectives of the attack of tank and motorized rifle subunits.

In addition to its usual tasks, artillery destroys enemy radiotechnical means and night vision equipment.

With the aim of achieving surprise, and if conditions are favorable, the offensive can begin without preparation fire and without using illumination resources. In this case, artillery, tanks, and other fire weapons open fire at the beginning of the attack or on a signal from the attacking troops.

Fire weapons detailed to combat enemy artillery and mortars must be in constant readiness to open fire immediately against targets that have been previously reconnoitered or have newly appeared.

335. At the appointed time, motorized rifle subunits of the first echelon, with close support tanks in the combat formations of companies, attack resolutely the objectives they have been given and develop the offensive into the depth. Illumination is co-ordinated with the advance of troops and their operations in such a way as to preclude the illumination of the attacking subunits and not to interfere with the use of night vision equipment.

Bold and daring operations by subunits become of special significance, as well as the display of great initiative by all commanding officers, with the aim of rapid exploitation of favorable features in the situation for the fulfilment of the task they have been given.

From the beginning of the attack, a large part of the artillery attached to the regiment is subordinated to battalions and companies in order to support their independent actions in developing the offensive in depth. The signals for artillery to switch and cease fire are given by commanding officers of battalions and companies. Specially detailed batteries fire illuminating and incendiary shells with the aim of starting fires in the enemy's dispositions, in order to illuminate the terrain, to set up lighted markers (reference points), and to facilitate fire adjustment. Guns are detailed to fire tracer shells to indicate the axis of the offensive.

Aircraft, in addition to fulfilling basic tasks, are brought in to create lighted reference points in the enemy's dispositions and to illuminate his most important targets.

During combat, illumination resources are controlled by the commanding officers to whom they are subordinated. The direction of illumination carried out by aircraft is exercised through representatives of the air large units.

336. To repel enemy counterattacks at night, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer organizes additional reconnaissance, especially on the flanks, with the aim of detecting in time the moving up of the enemy's reserves; he organizes continuous illumination of the terrain on the axes of possible counterattacks, and also prepares artillery fire and aircraft strikes against the counterattacking enemy.

The most advantageous way of destroying a counterattacking enemy is by a strike against his flanks and rear by the attacking troops while he is moving up and deploying. Before the attack, accompanying tanks and guns lay down con-

centrated direct-laying fire at long ranges. With this aim, intensive illumination of the enemy must be carried out.

337. In shifting from night to day combat operations, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer must not permit a decrease in the rate of the offensive, and must ensure that the troops move forward swiftly at daybreak; he must also be ready to repel possible enemy counterattacks. With these aims, additional reconnaissance is organized, combat tasks and problems concerning collaboration are made more precise, tactical missiles and artillery, especially antitank artillery, are brought up, antiair defense is strengthened, and, if necessary, the combined-arms reserves are committed to combat.

338. If the night offensive is a development of combat operations during the day, the transition to the night offensive is carried out without a break.

It is carried out both by the main forces as well as by the division's (regiment's) combined-arms reserve, or by specially assigned units (subunits). In implementing the offensive, extensive use is made of gaps in the enemy's combat formations.

Troops are prepared for night operations before nightfall during the daytime offensive.

7. Capture of a Town

339. As a rule, towns are captured by a strike delivered by attacking troops from the march. Success in capturing a town is achieved by routing the enemy's main forces in the approaches to it and by forestalling him in reaching the town.

When the offensive develops successfully, the town is captured by a simultaneous strike by forward detachments and advance guards from various sides, mainly from the flanks and rear. If the enemy defends the town strongly and it has proved impossible to seize it from the march, the troops blockade the town.

The division's (regiment's) main forces, without getting involved in combat for the town, make a detour around it and advance swiftly into the depth.

In cases where it is impossible to by-pass the town it is captured by a simultaneous attack by the attacking troops from the front and the flanks.

340. The decision to capture a town is made when the offensive is being planned and is made more precise while

the troops are moving up to it, on the basis of intelligence data and of the fighting of forward detachments and advance guards.

In preparing the offensive, the commanding officer and staff of the division (regiment) study the layout of the town in advance and the nature of the buildings and of underground structures.

All commanding officers down to companies inclusive are provided with large-scale maps (plans, photographs) of the town with the important objectives and structures, the capture of which would facilitate the fulfilment of the task set, marked on them.

341. On approaching a town, reconnaissance must establish: the axis of withdrawal of the enemy's main forces; the nature of the defense in front of the town and in it, the composition of the garrison, its readiness for combat, the location of the control points and communications centers.

Reconnaissance is carried out by reconnaissance patrols and specially trained groups.

342. When capturing a town from the march, forward detachments and advance guards destroy the withdrawing enemy by decisive attacks, move forward swiftly to the approaches to the town, and attack it from various sides.

To support the troops in capturing the town and destroying the enemy garrison, or to seize important objectives on routes leading from the town to the rear, tactical airborne forces may be landed by the division.

Exploiting gaps and weakly manned sectors in the enemy's combat formations, as well as the results of fire strikes, the forward detachments, advance guards, and airborne forces break into the town from the march and seize the most important objectives and main streets.

Success in destroying the enemy garrison is achieved by swift and coordinated operations by the attacking troops with the aim of breaking up and annihilating the enemy piecemeal. The destruction of the enemy in the town must be completed in the shortest possible period of time. The troops attacking from various sides must know the axes of each other's operations, and also the signals for ceasing fire.

Having destroyed the defending enemy, the troops consolidate the most important objectives with part of their forces and immediately leave the town.

343. In cases when an attempt to seize the town from the march with the forces of forward detachments and advance guards has failed, they blockade the town. With this aim, it is essential to capture the most important objectives in the outskirts of the town and to cut roads.

Enemy attempts to leave the town are beaten back by fire from artillery and tanks, and also by aircraft strikes. Mine obstacles are set up on the garrison's possible axes of withdrawal. With the aim of seizing important objectives and hastening the capitulation of the defending enemy, individual attacks may be made.

Fighter aircraft and antiair defense weapons blockade the besieged garrison from the air and cover their own troops against enemy air attacks.

In the cases when a town is strongly fortified and its capture could lead to protracted fighting, it is advisable to leave part of the front of encirclement open in a favorable sector, let the enemy out, and destroy him outside the town by fire from all weapons and by decisive attacks from previously prepared lines.

344. If the division's main forces are being employed to capture a large town, the offensive is usually launched after a short period of preparation.

The combat tasks for the division and for regiments are determined on the basis of the enemy's defense, the layout of the town, and also on the way nuclear and other destructive weapons are to be employed.

The division's immediate task may consist of routing the enemy garrison and reaching the opposite outskirts of the town. The immediate task of a regiment usually consists of destroying the opposing enemy and reaching the important main streets or the center of the town, and its subsequent task — of completing the rout of the enemy garrison and reaching the opposite outskirts of the town.

345. As a rule, the division's (regiment's) combat formation is drawn up in one echelon with the allocation of strong combined-arms reserves; before being committed to combat,

the reserves are disposed outside the town or in its outskirts in several places at street intersections. The tank regiment is usually employed as part of the combined-arms reserve.

346. Tactical missiles, artillery, and tanks brought in for firing from concealed firing positions move up to their firing positions under cover of forward detachments and advance guards.

Before the town is attacked by the division's (regiment's) main forces, fire preparation is usually carried out mainly by howitzers and mortars. The fire of guns and tanks assigned for direct-laying fire, as well as of grenade launchers, assumes special importance. Large-caliber guns may be brought in for direct-laying fire.

Aircraft are used to neutralize the enemy in strong points which are set up in very strongly constructed buildings and to deliver strikes against enemy reserves moving up and against his nuclear attack weapons and artillery.

Nuclear weapons are usually employed in cases when the enemy has turned the town into a strong center of resistance and it is impossible to capture it by using conventional weapons of destruction, while to leave the town with an enemy garrison in it would be inadvisable.

347. The division's (regiment's) main forces move up to the line seized by forward detachments and advance guards, deploy from the march into combat formation, deliver swift strikes against the enemy, break him up, and destroy him piecemeal.

Regiments and battalions advance in the town mainly along the principal main streets, resorting extensively to bypassing and enveloping movements. Close support tanks of motorized rifle subunits are attached to companies and platoons and operate in their combat formations. Strong points are captured by strikes at their flanks and rear. Individual objectives in the town are attacked by reinforced battalions, companies, and platoons, widespread use being made of direct-laying fire from guns, tanks, grenade launchers, mortars, and of smoke agents.

Underground structures and transportation systems are used to infiltrate reconnaissance and sabotage groups into the enemy's rear, as well as subunits for the purpose of attacking his strong points from the rear.

To protect flanks and to repel enemy counterattacks from the rear, covering detachments are left. Important captured objectives are consolidated. Surviving enemy groups are destroyed by subunits specially assigned for this purpose.

After destroying the enemy garrison and capturing the town, the troops move out of it immediately.

348. In capturing the town, as a rule, the division's antiaircraft weapons deploy in its outskirts, in squares, parks, and away from high buildings. Antiaircraft assault guns move behind the attacking battalions of the first echelon.

349. When a town is being captured, subunits of engineer troops conduct engineer reconnaissance of the enemy's fortifications and obstacles, and also of the underground structures in the town; they make passages through obstacles and obstructions, blow up buildings which are being defended by the enemy, support the forcing of rivers and canals in the town, and adapt underground structures as control points and medical posts.

8. The Division (Regiment) in a Joint Offensive with Large Units (Warships) of the Navy

350. Offensive operations by large units (units) of ground forces together with large units (warships) of the Navy take place when the division (regiment) is put ashore as a seaborne landing force, when an offensive is being conducted along a seacoast or along the bank of a wide river, and also when an offensive is launched with the aim of reaching a sea (river) shore.

351. Operating as an operational-tactical seaborne landing force, the division (regiment) can capture an important area or objectives on shore and facilitate the success of troops attacking along the seacoast; it may be landed to capture an island or group of islands, as well as sectors of coast line on the opposite shore of sea straits with the aim of facilitating their forcing by troops or of supporting the passage through them of warships.

For landing operations, as a rule, the division (regiment) is reinforced by units (subunits) of amphibious tanks and by antiair defense weapons. To accelerate the landing of troops of the first echelon, helicopters may be attached to the landing force. Tank subunits and units are provided with amphibious equipment.

Tank units supplied with individual amphibious equipment may be employed to deliver a strike against the enemy's rear, carrying out a maneuver at sea under their own power, and they may also operate as forward detachments in the capture of islands, beachheads, and objectives on the opposite shores of straits. With these aims, they are reinforced by amphibious tanks and motorized rifle subunits in amphibious armored personnel carriers. The operations of these units are conducted in close collaboration with aircraft and with warships of the Navy.

352. A seaborne landing force is usually landed on an unfortified coast, and sometimes in a port.

As a rule, the division's first echelon is landed from special landing craft. The remaining units (subunits) of the division may be carried to the landing area in transports, and in some cases also in warships. If these units (subunits) cannot be disembarked directly onto the shore, they are landed on the shore after transferring to landing craft and assault craft.

When the water obstacle is not a wide one, and when the weather is favorable, amphibious tanks and tanks provided with individual amphibious equipment can cross the sea under their own power or may be towed by warships.

Before the seaborne landing force is landed, or simultaneously with the landing, airborne forces are dropped (landed) to seize and hold a sector of the coastline, and also to prevent enemy reserves from moving to the landing area.

353. To destroy and neutralize the enemy's antilanding defense, as a rule, [redacted] preparation fire for the landing and fire support for the operations of the landing forces on shore are carried out.

Nuclear strikes are delivered in the first place against the enemy's nuclear attack weapons, his most important centers of resistance, and his reserves in the immediate depth.

Preparation fire for the landing is provided by the detachment of warships (by warships) detailed for fire support and by aircraft until the landing and assault craft carrying the battalions of the first echelon approach the landing points; it is also provided by missile troops of the ground forces not included in the composition of the landing force. Depending on the composition of the landing force, the detachment of warships detailed for fire support can be divided into groups of warships for fire support to correspond with the number of regiments in the first echelon of the division.

Fire support for the landing force is provided by the fire weapons of warships, by aircraft, and by the artillery of the landing force until it has carried out its tasks on the shore.

In some cases, with the aim of ensuring surprise, the landing force may be landed without preparation fire.

354. The division is landed on a front of 20 to 30 km. A regiment of the first echelon is allotted a landing sector up to 10 km in width, while a battalion is given a landing point. A regiment usually lands at several points. The distance between adjacent landing points must be such as to ensure collaboration between subunits in conducting combat operations and to exclude the neutralization of two points by the explosion of one medium yield nuclear shell.

355. When a division (regiment) carries out tasks as a seaborne landing force, the large units of warships (individual warships) of the navy and aviation are entrusted with the following:

— transportation of the division (regiment) by sea and landing it on the shore;

— protection of the landing force against strikes from enemy warships and aircraft during the embarkation, the sea crossing, while landing, and during combat on shore;

— neutralization and destruction of the enemy's missile weapons and artillery, his strong points, and reserves located directly on the shore and immediately behind it;

— making channels through obstacles at sea, and through antilanding obstacles in the water — together with subunits of engineer troops in the landing force;

— supporting the landing of the division (regiment) and its operations on the shore;

— ensuring the delivery of reinforcements in men and supplies to the landing force, and the evacuation of the sick and wounded.

356. To carry out the task of transporting and landing the landing force, a landing detachment is formed and a naval officer is appointed to command it. To him are sub-

ordinated all the combat and landing craft, transports, and assault craft which are taking part in the landing operation. The commanding officer of the landing detachment is responsible for the embarkation, the sea crossing, and the landing of the landing force in the designated area.

The commanding officer of the division (regiment) being landed is usually appointed to command the landing force. From the moment the order is received to embark in warships, and until the landing of the division's (regiment's) main forces on shore is completed, he is directly subordinate to the commanding officer of the landing detachment.

While the landing force is crossing the sea and during the landing of the first echelon, the commanding officer of the landing force and a representative of the aviation detailed to support the landing are on the same warship as the commanding officer of the landing detachment.

The deputy commanding officer of the landing detachment and the deputy commanding officer of the landing force with a group of their staff officers are on another warship.

357. Preparation of the division (regiment), of the large units of warships (individual warships), and of aircraft for the landing operations includes the following:

— planning the operations of the landing force, of the ships in the landing detachment and of aircraft;

— preparing the fleet's landing and assault craft, and the guns, combat equipment, and other freight of the division (regiment) for loading and landing, and also tanks for crossing water obstacles under their own power;

— training troops in embarkation, landing, and conducting combat operations to seize the shore, taking into account the nature of the enemy's antilanding defense in the area of impending operations;

— preparing measures for reconnaissance, for the protection of troops against weapons of mass destruction, for antiair defense, camouflage, navigational-hydrographic, and other kinds of support.

358. The operations of the division (regiment) and of the warships in the landing detachment for the landing are planned

on the basis of the task set by the senior commander.

The commanding officer of the landing detachment, together with the commanding officer of the division (regiment), work out a plan for the landing, which provides for the following:

— the overall goal of the operations, the time and place for landing the landing force, and the tasks on the shore;

— the tasks to be fulfilled on the instructions of the senior commander by nuclear and other weapons of destruction to destroy and neutralize the enemy's antilanding defense installations, and also measures to cover the landing force from the sea and against strikes from the air;

— the sectors, points, and procedure for landing the units (subunits) and their tasks when operating on shore;

— the composition, the place, the tasks, and the time for landing airborne forces;

— the time, places (areas), and procedure for concentrating the division (regiment) and the warships of the landing detachment;

— the distribution of troops in landing and assault craft, the points, time, and procedure for embarking (loading);

— the layout of the landing detachment's march formation and the procedure for crossing the sea;

— the layout of the combat formation of the landing detachment and the tasks of warships and aircraft in supporting the landing of the division (regiment);

— the procedure for carrying out preparation fire and fire support of the operations of the landing force on shore;

— measures for support of all kinds for the landing force during concentration and embarkation, while at sea, and during the landing;

— organization of control and communications for the period of the landing operations;

— the procedure for organizing the landing base and its defense.

On the basis of the plan for landing the landing force, confirmed by the senior commander, the commanding officer of the landing detachment gives the combat order for the landing, and the commanding officer of the division (regiment gives) the combat orders: for embarkation and the route to be followed, for landing and conducting combat operations on the shore, and he also gives directions regarding collaboration, in accordance with which the plan is drawn up.

359. For the disposition of troops directly before embarkation (loading), assembly areas providing for dispersed and concealed disposition of troops and possibilities for them to move out quickly for embarkation (loading) are allotted and equipped.

For orderly embarkation and for the maintenance of order, commandants of embarkation points are appointed on instructions from the commanding officer of the landing detachment, and officers from the landing force are assigned to assist them.

While troops are disposed in waiting areas, and during their embarkation (loading), cover for them against enemy air strikes is provided by the weapons of the senior commander and by the antiair defense weapons of the landing force and of warships.

To ensure a quick landing of subunits and their independence, they are embarked in ships together with the reinforcements attached to them. Combat equipment is distributed in a way that will ensure its rapid unloading for participation in combat. Freight of the same type, including ammunition, is distributed among as many ships as possible.

360. To achieve secrecy of operations and to ensure protection of the landing force against attack by the enemy's nuclear weapons, the embarkation of troops and the loading of combat equipment and freight, as well as the landing forces' sea passage should be carried out in dispersed order, with observance of camouflage measures. With this aim, as a rule, the embarkation and the task forces' sea crossing is carried out at night and in

other conditions of limited visibility by several landing detachments consisting of groups of warships. Each group of warships must transport not more than one regiment.

361. On approaching the landing area, and during the landing, the commanding officer of the landing detachment, together with the commanding officer of the landing force may, if necessary, change the points for the landing on the basis of the task given to the landing force for operations on shore and the counteraction of the enemy, taking into account also the rapidity and convenience with which the landing can be made. The final decision in the selection of points for the landing is made by the commanding officer of the landing detachment.

When the landing force approaches the landing area, the warships providing fire support, together with aircraft, start preparation fire upon a signal from the commanding officer of the landing detachment.

Channels are made through the mine fields and anti-landing obstacles in the approaches to the landing points and are subsequently cleared and widened by obstacle clearing groups.

As a rule, amphibious tanks enter the water before the landing craft reach the landing points, and they proceed to the shore under their own power.

After the amphibious tanks and tanks supplied with individual amphibious equipment, the landing craft carrying subunits of the first echelon approach the landing points.

If the assault craft cannot go right up to the shore, subunits are put ashore in amphibious armored personnel carriers or by jumping into the water, if its depth at the landing place is not more than one meter. Tanks, armored personnel carriers (vehicles), and artillery prime movers are unloaded into the water if the depth at the place of unloading and the nature of the bottom allow them to move to the shore under their own power.

To ensure rapid capture of the landing points directly before the landing craft approach the shore, if circumstances are favorable, some of the subunits of the first echelon may be landed on the shore from helicopters. The helicopters may take off from coastal airfields (landing strips) or from specially equipped warships (transports) if there are such in the composition of the landing detachment.

362. Subunits of the first echelon which have been landed deploy from the march into combat formation and, supported by gunfire from the ships, artillery, and tanks, and by aircraft strikes, go over to the attack, destroy the enemy on the shore, and, exploiting the results of nuclear strikes and the operations of airborne forces, develop the attack into the depth.

Missile subunits and artillery, as they are unloaded, immediately deploy and support the combat operations of the troops which have been landed.

363. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer and his staff go ashore after the landing of the division's (regiment's) first echelon.

After going ashore the divisional (regimental) commanding officer is obliged to clarify the situation, the tasks of units (subunits) on shore, and the procedure for collaboration, to take steps for rapid exploitation of success, for the destruction of the enemy between the landing points and the axes of advance of units (subunits), for the prevention or delay in the approach of enemy reserves to the area of combat operations, for the consolidation of the captured shore, and for consolidation of the division's (regiment's) flanks.

364. During the combat operations of the landing force on shore, the large units of warships (individual warships) and aircraft provide fire support for the attacking troops and cover the landing area against strikes by enemy warships and aircraft, and also prevent his reserves from moving up to the landing area. The commanding officer of the landing force (commanding officers of regiments and battalions) must have with him representatives of the large unit of warships (individual warships) providing fire support and of aviation.

When the landing of the landing force has been completed, the ships of the landing detachment are brought in: for fire support of the operations of the landing force on shore, for covering the landing base against enemy strikes from the sea, for ensuring the transportation of materiel to the landing force, and for evacuating the sick and wounded.

365. To ensure the landing of the main forces of the landing force and their replenishment with all kinds of supplies and personnel, to store materiel, and to evacuate the wounded, a landing base for the landing force is organized and equipped with moorages, depots, approach routes, and navigational protection.

To equip the landing base and protect it, the necessary forces and means are assigned and placed under the command of the commanding officer of the landing detachment on the decision of the senior commander.

A naval officer, who is subordinated to the commanding officer of the landing detachment, is appointed to command the landing base.

366. In an area where there are reefs, the landing of a seaborne landing force, after the islands on the outer edge of the archipelago have been captured, becomes a series of repeated crossings from island to island with the aim of reaching the mainland, extensive use being made of army ferrying and landing equipment, amphibious tanks, and landing and assault craft.

When a seaborne landing force is operating in the depth of an area with reefs, use may be made mainly of small, shallow-draught ships, of mobile artillery units of the Navy, and of land artillery.

367. When attacking along a seacoast or along the bank of a large river, as well as with the aim of reaching the sea shore, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer, in addition to the usual matters, provides for the following: planning of collaboration with large units (warships) of the Navy, brought in to assist the attacking troops; the landing, if necessary, of subunits drawn from the division as a seaborne landing force; measures for the defense of the coast line in the rear of the attacking troops with the aim of preventing enemy landings, as well as measures for forcing water obstacles during the offensive in their widest part and for crossing marshy sectors of terrain on the coast line.

368. Large units of warships (individual warships) of the Navy and units of coastal missile artillery troops, as well as aircraft, may be brought in when the division (regiment) is attacking along a sea coast line to support the attacking troops, to ensure the landing of subunits as a seaborne landing force, to prevent the enemy from making landings in the rear, to cover the division (regiment) against strikes from enemy warships and aircraft while it is operating on the coast and forcing water obstacles, to prevent the enemy from evacuating and supplying his troops by sea, to ensure the transportation of materiel, and also [one line missing].

369. For fire support of the division (regiment), warships and units of coastal missile-artillery troops are

usually assigned from the forces of the navy, the tasks which they are to carry out being given to them by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer. In doing this, the fire of supporting warships and coastal artillery units is planned against targets in the enemy's defense which, in the prevailing conditions, cannot be neutralized by the division's (regiment's) weapons.

For collaboration between the division (regiment) and warships, coastal artillery units of the Navy and aircraft, common reference points, signals for collaboration, mutual recognition signals, signals for calling, and signals for switching and ceasing fire are arranged, as well as methods for indicating targets.

370. Subunits drawn from the division (regiment) may be landed as a seaborne landing force with the aim of seizing and holding an important objective or area in the depth of the enemy's defense, for disrupting the enemy's control of his troops and the work of his rear services, as well as for capturing islands located near the coast.

The seaborne landing force is landed from ships of the navy and from self-propelled ferrying equipment of the division (regiment). All the ships and assault craft are formed into a landing detachment. Usually, a naval officer who is subordinated to the divisional (regimental) commanding officer is put in command of the detachment.

Cover during the sea crossing and the landing and support for the operations of the seaborne landing force on shore are provided by naval forces and aircraft.

9. An Offensive in Mountainous Country

371. Combat operations of troops in mountainous country are influenced by: the very broken nature of the country and the existence of obstacles which are difficult to surmount; the limited number of roads and difficulties in moving along them; the possibility of landslides, especially in the event of nuclear bursts; the screening effect of mountains on the functioning of radio and radar, and of radiotechnical and sound reconnaissance equipment; the possibility that toxic substances will lie stagnant for a long time in gorges and deep valleys; rapid changes in the weather during twenty-four hours; loss of power in engines and greater expenditure of fuel.

372. An offensive in mountainous country is usually carried out in a situation when troops are in direct contact

with the enemy and is conducted on several axes, mainly along roads, valleys, and mountain ridges in combination with flanking and enveloping movements and the employment of airborne forces.

In wide valleys, foothills, and when a sufficient number of roads are available, the offensive may be carried out from the march by applying the usual conditions.

373. When attacking in mountainous country, the division is given an immediate and a subsequent task and a task for the day.

The immediate task of the division may be to rout the defending units of the first echelon of the enemy's division in the zone of the offensive and to capture his main defensive position.

The subsequent task of the division consists of developing the offensive into the depth with the aim of destroying the enemy's reserves and breaking through his defense throughout the whole depth of the division in the first echelon.

The division's task for the day may be to rout the enemy's approaching reserves and to seize important objectives which would support the development of the offensive into the depth.

A regiment of the first echelon is given an immediate and a subsequent task and an axis of further advance.

The regiment's tasks in depth usually coincide with those of the division.

374. The division (regiment) breaks through the enemy's defense in the mountains in a wider zone which, depending on the nature of the terrain, may include: for the division, two or three or more axes; for the regiment, one or two axes.

The division's (regiment's) combat formation is drawn up in conformity with the plan of impending operations, and the importance and capacity of the separate axes. For attacking on separate axes, the first echelon is composed of regiments (battalions) reinforced with artillery, mainly howitzers, with mortars, and with subunits of engineer and chemical troops.

The combat formation of the division (regiment) includes flanking detachments composed of reinforced motorized rifle subunits.

The tank regiment of the motorized rifle division is usually employed in the combined-arms reserve (second echelon) and is committed to combat in order to develop the success of regiments of the first echelon on terrain on which tanks can operate.

When tank subunits are carrying out independent tasks for seizing road junctions, passes, inhabitated localities, or heights, subunits of motorized rifle and engineer troops are attached to them.

375. Reconnaissance must establish: the axes on which it is possible to lay out cross-country routes; the places where there are mountain obstacles, thernature of the obstacles and also the ways of making detours around them; concealed approaches, emerging on the flanks and in the rear of the enemy; the existence of sources of water.

376. In making a decision for an offensive in mountainous country, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer, in addition to the usual problems, determines the composition and tasks of flanking detachments and the procedure for collaboration between them and the units (subunits) attacking from the front.

In organizing collaboration, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer indicates: the axes on which the flanking detachments are to move, the procedure to be followed by them in doing so and the lines from which they must go into the attack; the procedure for combined operations for the destruction of the enemy, and also the signals for control and mutual recognition.

377. Preparation fire and fire support of the offensive in mountainous country is carried out taking into account the nature of the enemy's defense.

When the enemy's defense is laid out in many tiers, his manpower and fire weapons in all the tiers are neutralized simultaneously. Particular care is taken to neutralize strong points adjoining the axes of the offensive.

Tactical missiles are employed to destroy and attack the enemy's nuclear weapons and troops in passes, gorges, and ravines, and also when they are crossing mountain rivers and other places which are difficult to cross. When selecting objectives for the delivery of nuclear strikes, it should be taken into account that this may lead to the creation of obstructions and wreckage, and this may cause difficulties for the advancing troops.

Artillery and mortars destroy and neutralize the enemy's manpower and fire weapons in strong points on heights, ridges, on reverse slopes, and in shelters. The fire of guns and tanks detailed for direct fire at long ranges is of special importance in mountainous country.

Aircraft are employed to attack the enemy's troops in areas which are inaccessible to artillery fire, in gorges and defiles, and also for adjustment of artillery fire and for reconnaissance.

378. Regiments (battalions) of the first echelon, supported by artillery fire and aircraft strikes, attack the enemy swiftly along valleys and mountain roads in combination with movements for outflanking (enveloping) his positions, capture the commanding heights and passes, and break through boldly into the depth of his defense.

Commanding heights and mountain passes which are defended by the enemy are usually captured by units (subunits) attacking from the front in collaboration with flanking detachments and airborne forces, if these are landed.

Flanking detachments, exploiting concealed approaches, sectors of mountain terrain which are difficult to cross, and gaps in the enemy's combat formation, break through boldly into the depth of the defense, seize commanding heights adjoining the mountain pass, and then, by striking at the enemy's flanks and rear, together with units (subunits) attacking from the front, capture the pass.

Airborne forces, operating independently or in collaboration with flanking detachments, seize crossings over rivers, bridges (crossings) over canyons, road junctions, and other important objectives, and assist the division's (regiment's) main forces to break up the enemy's defense and to destroy him piecemeal.

The combined-arms reserve (second echelon) of the division (regiment) moves at full strength on the selected axis or in dispersed order on several axes in readiness to develop the success of units (subunits) of the first echelon, and to repel enemy counterattacks.

379. Subunits of engineer troops, in addition to their usual tasks, carry out blasting operations with the aim of making passages through obstructions on the axes of the attacking troops; they lay out cross-country routes and passing areas on narrow stretches of mountain roads, erect special bridges (crossings) and cable roads across mountain

rivers and gorges (canyons); and carry out camouflage work and also arrange points where the personnel can warm themselves.

380. Control of troops during combat in mountainous country is carried out from static and mobile posts.

Control points must be close to units (subunits) operating on the main axis. To cope with sectors of mountain terrain which are difficult to cross, use is made of helicopters specially fitted out with means of communication.

The difficulty of observation and sharp changes in the conditions in mountainous country make it essential that, in addition to control points, a thick network of observation points (posts), situated on commanding heights, should be organized.

Communications are maintained by radio and by mobile means organized by axes. For communications with units, especially with subunits, which are operating cut off from the main forces or on terrain which is difficult to cross, use is also made of helicopters.

381. Rear area units (subunits) of the division (regiment) are dispersed by axes. On each axis stocks of supplies necessary for waging combat and feeding the personnel are arranged, and vehicle transport and helicopters for bringing up supplies and for evacuation, and also medical and repair subunits, are detached. In certain cases, pack transportation and teams of porters are organized.

10. An Offensive in Deserts

382. When planning an offensive in deserts, the following are taken into account: the possibility of moving without roads; the difficulty of camouflage and orientation; sudden changes in the temperature during a twenty-four hour period; frequent winds carrying large quantities of sand, which impedes observation and gunfire, and also has a damaging effect on the working of vehicles, on armaments, and other technical equipment; the lack of water and fuel over long distances; the possibility of greater and more protracted contamination of the air and ground with radioactive substances owing to the accumulation of dust and the spreading of such substances together with drifting sand.

383. In desert operations, reconnaissance is carried out on a broad front, on [illegible] axes, and to great depth. The

existence of considerable gaps in the enemy's defense enables reconnaissance subunits to penetrate deeply into his dispositions, and to reconnoiter his nuclear attack weapons, reserves, control points, and other objectives.

To convey deep reconnaissance groups to the enemy's rear and to his open flanks, extensive use is made of helicopters.

Aerial reconnaissance, which has greater possibilities in deserts, becomes of great significance.

384. As a rule the division (regiment) attacks a defending enemy in the desert, from the march on a wide front on the most accessible separate axes, which lead to the rear of the enemy defending important areas and objectives. The forces and the composition of the troops for operations on the axes are determined by the combat task and the possibilities of supporting them with material and technical supplies. As a rule, regiments attack on one axis. In certain cases, a regiment can attack on two axes, concentrating its main efforts on the main one of the two..

To seize road junctions in the enemy's rear, to destroy his nuclear attack weapons, his control points, and communications centers, and to disrupt the work of his rear services, the division (regiment) may detach a flanking detachment, usually consisting of a reinforced motorized rifle (tank) battalion.

385. In drawing up the combat formations of the division (regiment), special attention is paid to ensuring that regiments (battalions) can operate independently. With this in view, a large part of the artillery and other reinforcements are attached to them.

The division's combined-arms reserve may be created on one or two axes of attack and committed to combat at different times. During the offensive, reserves move in more dispersed order along the front and into the depth. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer moves the antitank reserve and the mobile obstacle detachment nearer the threatened flank in readiness to maneuver them rapidly onto other axes of the offensive.

386. The even nature of the terrain permits the extensive employment of dropped and landed tactical airborne forces in order to destroy the enemy's nuclear and chemical attack weapons, to seize and hold individual objectives, and sometimes also to cover the flanks.

To ensure concealment and surprise, it is advisable to land (drop) the airborne troops at night.

387. A switch of the troops to the offensive is preceded by preparation fire, which is usually directed against individual centers in the defense and against strong points and which can start at different times on each axis.

During the preparation fire, extensive use is made of guns and tanks assigned for direct-laying fire.

Fire support for the offensive is usually accomplished by concentrating fire against individual strong points and targets which are hindering the advance of the troops. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer must make provision for switching fire to secure the flanks, and to support the operations of flanking detachments and airborne forces.

The lack of a soundly developed geodetic grid makes it necessary to tie in firing positions and observation points with the local system of coordinates on a scale [one line missing].

388. Nuclear and chemical weapons are employed to annihilate the enemy's concentrations outside inhabited localities, and against his reserves moving up on the flanks of our troops; against aircraft on airfields, and also to destroy supply depots. They are employed taking into account the need to preserve sources of water for use by our troops.

389. In an offensive in deserts, aircraft are brought in to deliver strikes against strong points and centers of resistance and against reserves, especially when these concentrate near sources of water and when they appear on the flanks of troops which are attacking in support of troops operating in the enemy's rear, and to adjust artillery fire.

Air transports and helicopters are employed to drop (landing) airborne forces, to lifting troops from one axis to another, to deliver foodstuffs, water, and other freight, and also to evacuate the sick and wounded.

390. The special features of engineer support of an offensive in deserts are: marking out the movement routes for troops with stable, easily visible signs and setting up of additional reference points; laying and maintaining cross-country routes over salt marsh and sandy sectors of the terrain; arranging and maintaining water supply points;

carrying out measures for camouflage, taking into account the nature of the terrain and the vegetation. Standard camouflage equipment is used for the camouflage of troops.

391. Communications in the division (regiment) are planned with a view to ensuring reliable control of troops operating on the axes, and also of the flanking detachments and the tactical airborne forces. Aircraft and helicopters are widely used for communications.

To control troops operating at a considerable distance from the main forces, auxiliary communications networks may be set up.

392. Material, technical, and medical support are organized according to the operations of troops on each axis so that the troops can conduct successful combat operations when cut off from the main forces for a considerable time.

Rear area units (subunits) are disposed in more dispersed order and nearer to the sources of water. The timely bringing up of water and fuel to the troops is of special importance.

As the troops advance into the depth, intermediate depots may be set up and additional water supply points are arranged.

When carrying on operations in deserts, special attention is paid to protect weapons and equipment from dust and sand. Vehicles are provided with reserve filters and equipment to improve their cross-country performance over sandy terrain.

11. An Offensive Under Arctic Conditions

393. The combat operations of troops under arctic conditions are influenced by: the almost inaccessible nature of the hilly and boggy tundra terrain; the limited number of roads and accessible areas for troop operations; the difficulty of carrying out engineer work in rocky and boggy ground; the severe climate with a long winter, and complicated meteorological conditions; the polar night and the polar day; ionospheric and geomagnetic disturbances (storms). When troops move, the speed of vehicles is considerably slower and the expenditure of fuel greater.

394. In operations under arctic conditions, reconnaissance must establish above all the whereabouts of the enemy's main grouping and the axis of its operations, where

his nuclear attack weapons are disposed, and the whereabouts of flanking detachments.

Reconnaissance is conducted mainly by small subunits on skis or in vehicles with high cross-country performance, which operate, as a rule, off roads, and, to penetrate into the depth of the enemy's defense, exploit concealed stretches of terrain and gaps in his combat formations, as well as darkness and other conditions of limited visibility.

For conveying deep reconnaissance groups into the enemy's rear and reconnaissance elements to open flanks, extensive use is made of helicopters.

Aerial reconnaissance and observation of the enemy's operations from helicopters are of great importance.

395. As a rule, an offensive against a prepared enemy defensive position starts in a situation when troops are in direct contact with the enemy.

On terrain over which tanks and armored personnel carriers can move off roads, troops can attack from the march from an assembly area, which is usually selected nearer than under normal circumstances.

396. As a rule, the offensive under arctic conditions is conducted along roads and rivers, as well as on other accessible axes.

The division (regiment) attacks on a wider front than under normal conditions. Regiments and battalions usually operate on separate axes.

The efforts of troops are concentrated on the capture of inhabited localities, road junctions, passes, defiles, heights, wharves, crossings, and airfields.

397. As a rule, the combat formation of the division (regiment) is drawn up in greater depth with strong reserves (second echelons). Regiments and battalions, operating on axes, are allowed great independence in fulfilling the combat tasks.

The combined-arms reserves (second echelons) in the departure position for the offensive are disposed along roads or on lateral roads, echeloned in depth.

Sometimes antitank reserves may not be formed in divisions. In such cases, the antitank reserves of regiments must be in greater strength.

Flanking detachments are also included in the composition of the division's (regiment's) combat formation, and their tasks may be the following: to seize road junctions, bridges, and other important objectives in the enemy's rear; to destroy the enemy's nuclear attack weapons, his control points, communications centers and radar stations, and also to disrupt the work of his rear services. The flanking detachments are usually composed of reinforced mountain skiing and motorized rifle subunits. In areas where there are lakes, they may operate in amphibious vehicles.

398. When attacking under arctic conditions, a large part of the artillery is attached to units operating on separate axes. Fire maneuver becomes important, as well as the moving of artillery, especially mortars, by means of helicopters to support the operations of flanking detachments and battalions which are attacking at a considerable distance from the main forces.

The missile battalion may be employed by batteries, together with regiments operating on separate road axes.

Tanks usually attack along roads, valleys, plateaus, river beds, and other more accessible axes in close collaboration with motorized rifle subunits.

399. In planning an offensive against a prepared enemy defensive position, it is essential, in addition to the usual measures, to do the following: equip in advance heated shelters for personnel in the departure area for the offensive (in the assembly area); prepare weapons and combat equipment for use in low temperatures; take steps to improve the cross-country performance of wheeled and tracked vehicles and artillery; prepare routes to move up troops and also to bring rear units and subunits closer to the troops.

Great attention is paid to hydrometeorological support. Information regarding possible snowfalls and blizzards is given high priority and is passed to all personnel.

400. The special features of engineer support for the offensive under arctic conditions are: making passages through snow and ice obstacles; maintaining roads constantly in a passable condition and preparation of cross-country routes for the movement of troops; equipping and maintaining crossings over ice and constructing heated shelters.

Usually one route is prepared for each regiment of the first echelon. In selecting axes for roads under winter conditions, use is made of lakes and rivers.

Routes are built by specially formed detachments, the composition of which includes subunits of engineer troops with mechanical equipment for road work.

401. Communications in the division (regiment) are organized on the assumption that units and subunits will operate at considerable distances from each other. To ensure communications, extensive use is made of radio and radiorelay stations, helicopters, cross-country vehicles, skiers, reindeer and dog teams, and also of blinker signaling.

If it is impossible to arrange direct communications with troops operating on various axes, relaying stations and auxiliary communications centers are set up.

402. The shift to the offensive by troops is preceded by preparation fire.

Artillery, and also tanks brought in to fire from concealed firing positions, neutralize and destroy strong points in the forward area and in the immediate depth of the enemy's defense, his artillery and mortars, his control points and his radiotechnical resources. During preparation fire, extensive use is made of guns and tanks assigned for direct-laying fire. To destroy the enemy on reverse slopes, batteries, platoons, and guns make use of flanking fire.

Nuclear weapons and aircraft are employed to destroy the enemy's reserves and centers of resistance situated in the depth, and to wreck road junctions with the aim of preventing the enemy from maneuvering his troops.

If there are defensive structures of a permanent nature, preliminary destruction of the most important targets may be done before preparation fire.

Together with fire for annihilation and neutralization, extensive use is made of harassing fire, expecially in winter.

403. In deep snow, motorized rifle subunits attack on skis, making a detour around the enemy's flanks and reaching the rear of his strong points. An attack in armored personnel carriers is possible over frozen snow crust or on icy stretches.

Close support tanks of motorized rifle subunits usually attack in the latter's combat formations, and when the terrain is not difficult for tanks to cross — ahead of them.

Fire support of the offensive is carried out by concentrating fire against individual targets and sometimes,

especially when operations are being conducted along narrow road axes, by successive concentration of fire.

Flanking detachments usually begin operations when preparation fire starts. Exploiting gaps and open flanks in the enemy's combat formations, they penetrate secretly into his defense and, by delivering a strike against his rear and flanks, facilitate the destruction by units (subunits) of the first echelon of the defending enemy and his reserves which are moving up.

The combined-arms reserve (second echelon) of the division (regiment) is committed to combat usually on terrain where there are roads in the gaps between regiments (battalions). If necessary, it can be committed through the combat formation of the first echelon.

Before being committed to combat, the combined-arms reserve (second echelon) moves nearer the first echelon.

The existence of open flanks and big breaks and gaps calls for constant planning of protection for the troops and, above all, for tactical missiles, artillery, and control points, especially during the polar night, in snowstorms and in fog. In addition, it is essential to assign special subunits to destroy enemy reconnaissance and sabotage groups.

When fighting in the depth of the enemy's defense, the main efforts of the attacking troops are concentrated on destroying enemy troops covering roads, accessible axes, passes, defiles, and inhabited localities.

404. The forcing of bays (fiords) is done in circumstances when the tide ebbs and flows slowly.

In areas where there are lakes, reinforced subunits . 1 amphibious vehicles are dispatched to reach the enemy's rear and flanks; they cross the water obstacles quickly, attack the enemy suddenly, seize important objectives, and hold them until the main forces arrive.

In planning an offensive involving crossing stretches of ice, it is essential to determine the thickness and state of the ice, the weak spots which limit the use of heavy combat equipment, and also whether there are artificial obstacles on the ice; to clarify the weather forecast and its effect on the state of the ice; to plan movement routes and mark them out, taking steps if necessary to strengthen the ice in some sectors, to clear the snow and to remove various obstructions (hummocks,

snowdrifts), and also to organize a rescue service on the routes.

405. In planning rear area support, provision is made for the following: supplying the troops with warm clothing, footwear, heated tents, skis, fuel, heating and lighting equipment; making extensive use of helicopters and cross-country vehicles, and also of dog sled teams to deliver materiel and to evacuate the sick and wounded; measures for helping the personnel to avoid scurvy, catching cold, and getting frostbitten.

For protection against insects, personnel must be provided with mosquito nets and special ointments (liquids).

CHAPTER 10

Landing Operations and the Combat Operations of an Airborne Division (Parachute Regiment)

1. General Principles

406. The airborne division (parachute regiment) must be in constant combat readiness for landing and for conducting combat operations in the enemy's rear area.

Operating in the enemy's rear area, the division (regiment) can fulfil the following tasks: seize and hold important areas, road junctions, bridgeheads and crossings over water obstacles, mountain passes and passages; seize islands, straits zones on sea communications, and stretches of seacoast in areas where seaborne landing forces are being put ashore; seize airfields to facilitate the landing of one's own troops; destroy weapons of mass destruction, important headquarters, centers of communications, road and hydrotechnical structures.

407. The division is landed in the enemy's rear area by parachute drops or by parachute drops combined with airborne landings, as a rule, in one run. A regiment is landed by parachute drops in one run.

The time for the drop and the measures to secure the landing and to support the combat operations are determined by the senior commander.

The responsibility for the drop and for landing the division (regiment) at the indicated time and in the appointed area devolves on the commanding officer of the large unit of military transport aviation.

408. Successful employment of the division (regiment) is achieved by the following:

- surprise when dropping in the enemy's rear area;
- a drop in areas where there are no large enemy forces or where such forces have been reliably neutralized, especially the enemy's tank units and large units;
- reliable neutralization of the enemy's antiair defense weapons on the flight route;
- support of the division's (regiment's) combat operations with missile troops, and by aircraft and artillery of troops attacking from the front.

In case there is a rapid change in the situation, reserve strips onto which parachutists can drop (aircraft can land) must be allotted.

412. To prepare a division (regiment) for an airborne landing and for combat operations, a departure area for the landing is fixed. It includes the disposition areas of units, assembly areas for units and subunits before they move to the airfields, as well as airfields for military transport aircraft.

413. The dropping and landing of the division (regiment) in the enemy's rear area are preceded by preparation fire for the landing, which is conducted by missile troops and aircraft. It is carried out with the aim of destroying (neutralizing) the enemy's antiair defense weapons on the flight route and in the landing area, his manpower and fire weapons in the landing area and the areas adjacent to it, as well as his reserves and aircraft which may threaten the division's (regiment's) operations. [One line missing.]

Fire support for the combat operations of a division (regiment) starts as soon as the troops have landed in the enemy's rear area.

During fire support, the enemy's surviving and newly detected missile units, artillery and antiaircraft batteries, and aircraft are neutralized and destroyed, as well as his reserves which are moving to the area of the division's (regiment's) combat operations.

414. The antiair defense of the division (regiment), while it is being prepared for combat and during combat in the enemy's rear area, is carried out in the following ways;

- in the departure area for the landing — by troops of the antiair defense of the country or of the ground forces in collaboration with the fighters covering the given area; as a rule, the division's (regiment's) antiaircraft weapons are employed to cover the troops only until they are taken to the airfields for loading;

- during the flight to the landing area — by specially detailed fighter aircraft and the antiair defense weapons of the troops over whose zone the airlift of the division (regiment) is being carried out;

- in the landing area and while conducting combat operations — by fighter aircraft detailed to provide cover, and also by the antiaircraft weapons of the division (regiment)

While it is in the departure area for the landing, the division receives information about the enemy in the air from the nearest radar post of the antiair defense troops of the country or .... [one line missing].

415. Material support for the division (regiment) is provided on the instructions of the senior commander: during preparation for the aurbirbe kabdubg abd fir cinbat ioeratuibs—from the nearest depots of a formation or from central depots, and during combat operations—from airfields designated to provide such support.

2. Planning Landing Operations and Combat Operations

416. An airborne landing and combat operations are planned on the basis of the combat task that has been received. The commander who is planning the airborne landing usually indicates the following to the divisional (regimental) commanding officer:

— the landing area and information about the enemy in it and in areas adjacent to it;

— the task and the objectives in the landing area and in the area of combat operations which are to be neutralized by nuclear and other weapons before the landing takes place, as well as the procedure for collaboration with missile troops, the aviation (navy), and with large units attacking from the front;

— the composition of the military transport aircraft force assigned for the landing;

— the departure area for the landing, and the time and procedure for the concentration there of the division (regiment) and of the military transport aircraft;

— the procedure for providing air cover in the departure area for the landing, during the flight, and during combat operations.

— the procedure for maintaining communications and mutual information, as well as signalling collaboration;

— measures for materiel, technical, and medical support;

— the time of readiness for the landing.

417. Reconnaissance on behalf of the division (regiment) for preparation for the landing and combat operations is organized and carried out on the order of the senior commander. It must establish:

— the forces, composition, grouping, and nature of operations of the enemy in the landing area and adjacent areas, especially of his missile and tank troops, as well as the radiation situation;

— the forces and means of enemy antiair defense on the flight path and in the landing areas;

— the nature of the terrain and the condition of roads, the presence of strips and airfields suitable for dropping troops, as well as the presence and nature of antilanding obstacles in the landing area;

— the political orientation of the population and the sanitary-epidemiological situation in the area of combat operations;

— weather conditions in the landing area, and expected changes in the weather.

In order to examine the enemy and the terrain, extensive aerial photography of the area of the landing and area of combat operations is carried out by order of the division commanding officer. Immediately before the beginning of the landing, information about the enemy and weather conditions is made more precise.

Reconnaissance by the division's forces and means is carried out from the moment of being dropped in the enemy's rear area. The reconnaissance tasks are set before the landing takes place and are made more precise during combat operations. Subunits assigned to conduct reconnaissance may be dropped in the direct vicinity of their allotted objectives or may be sent out from the landing area.

418. In clarifying the task which he has been given, the C. O. must understand the senior commander's plan, the procedure for the employment of nuclear weapons in support of the division (regiment) and their influence on the fulfilment of the combat task, the duration of the combat operations in the enemy's rear area, and the arrangements for collaboration with missile troops, aircraft, and with the troops moving to link up with the division (regiment).

In assessing the situation, the C. O. studies the following:

— the forces, grouping and the possible nature of the enemy's operations, especially of his tank troops, the objectives which are to be seized, the nature of the antilanding obstacles, and the most important targets and objectives which it is essential to neutralize and destroy before the landing begins and during the combat operations.

— the radiation and chemical situation in the landing area and in the area of combat operations;

— the state and composition of the troops being landed what support they have, and their combat capabilities;

— the tasks and nature of the operations of large units and units which are moving forward to link up with the division (regiment);

— the composition and capabilities of the military transport aviation;

— the terrain from the standpoint of landing conditions and fulfilment of the combat task;

— weather conditions, the time of the year and of the day or night.

In assessing the situation, the C. O. makes use of all available intelligence, maps, aerial photographs, diagrams, and descriptions of the area of impending combat operations.

419. In his decision to carry out an airborne landing and combat operations, the C. O. determines the following:

- the plan of operations: what enemy to destroy after the landing has taken place and during the subsequent operations;
- the grouping of forces and weapons, the way in which they are to maneuver, and the procedure for landing them;
- the enemy objectives which are to be attacked by nuclear, chemical, and conventional weapons before the parachute drop;
- the combat tasks of units (subunits), the procedure for landing them, and collaboration between the troops;
- the stocks of materiel and the procedure for landing them;
- organization of control.

The divisional (regimental) C. O. makes his decision on the basis of a map and of aerial photographs. This decision is made more precise after the landing in the enemy's rear area.

420. The battle order for an airborne landing and combat operations usually lays down the following:

- a short evaluation of the enemy's grouping and his operations in the landing area and of his nearest reserves;
- the division's (regiment's) combat task, the plan of operations, and the enemy objectives in the landing area and in its vicinity which are to be destroyed by nuclear weapons;
- the tasks of adjacent troops;
- the combat tasks of units (subunits) and the procedure for landing them;
- the tasks for the artillery;
- the tasks for aircraft;
- the time at which troops are to be ready for the airborne landing;
- the place and time at which control points are to be set up.

During combat operations, combat tasks are set or clarified by means of short combat instructions which are passed on through staff officers, by signal communication facilities, and also by personal visits to subordinates.

421. In planning collaboration, the commanding officer must coordinate the operations of units (subunits) among themselves, indicate the procedure to be followed by aircraft and artillery in supporting them while they are fulfilling the immediate task and during subsequent operations, and he must also communicate the signals for calling for, switching, and ceasing fire, signals for target indication, mutual recognition signals with aircraft and troops operating from the front, and other signals.

The planned collaboration is worked out on models of the terrain, maps, and aerial photographs of the area of the impending combat operations. In doing this, not only available intelligence about the enemy is taken into account, but [one line missing].

To implement collaboration with the division during combat, aviation representatives with means of communication are landed in the enemy's rear area.

422. The airborne operation is planned in the departure area for the landing on the basis of the decision made for combat operations, and the planning is done by the commanding officer and staff of the division (regiment) with the assistance of the commanding officers and staffs of large units and units of military transport aircraft.

In planning the airborne landing, the divisional staff [illegible], together with the staff [illegible] of the large unit of military transport aircraft, draw up a schedule which shows the following: on what run, in what group, from what airfields, by what large units (units) of military transport aircraft, onto which landing strips, and in what combat order the units (subunits) are to be landed; the time for take-off; the height from which the parachute drop will be made; the beginning and end [illegible] of the parachute drop onto each landing strip.

After the landing schedule has been worked out, the staff draws up a scheme for moving the troops into the assembly areas. The scheme contains the following: the movement routes, the departure lines, the control lines and the time at which they are to be passed, the measures for combat support, the measures for providing commandant's service, and the time for concentrating in the assembly areas.

423. When planning an airborne landing involving several runs, the composition of the troops on each run is determined by the combat task, the situation, and the capabilities of the military transport aircraft.

The troops included in the first run usually consist of parachute units reinforced with antitank artillery and subunits of engineer troops, capable of seizing the landing area and ensuring the safety of the parachute drops from subsequent runs.

Subunits assigned for reconnaissance are landed from the leading aircraft.

424. In planning the airborne operation, the time is calculated on the basis of the time fixed for the beginning of the parachute drop "H-hour".

The beginning of the parachute drop "H-hour" is determined by the senior commander and communicated to the C. O., taking into account the time that will be required for the troops to move up to the airfields, for the loading of combat equipment and freight, for the embarkation of the personnel in aircraft, and for the flight of the military transport to the landing area.

425. In the departure area for the landing, the C. O. and headquarters of the division (regiment) are disposed near one of the airfields. As a rule they are landed on the first run. During the flight to the landing the C. O., his deputy, and the chief of staff are in different aircraft, each accompanied by a group of officers with means of communication who can, after landing, ensure independent control of troops. During the flight the C. O. must continuously clarify the situation in the landing area and the area of combat operations, maintaining uninterrupted communications for this purpose with the headquarters which is using the airborne troops.

426. In the departure area for the landing, communications with the senior commander, with collaborating troops, and with military transport aircraft are provided on instructions from the headquarters which is using the airborne troops. Communications with units (subunits) are provided in the following ways: in their disposition areas — by the division's (regiment's) line and mobile means and over lines (channels) of communication assigned by the higher headquarters; on reaching assembly areas and airfields — through communications centers of military transport aviation and by mobile means.

During flight, communications are maintained through the radio networks of military transport aviation.

427. The main means of communication in the area of combat operations is radio.

In planning communications, provision is made for establishing communications with the following: in the division — with regiments, battalions, and companies which are operating independently; in the regiment — with battalions, companies, and sometimes with platoons which are operating independently.

Communications with troops operating from the front, with aircraft, and with large units of the Navy are planned over special radio networks (point to point radio nets) on instructions from the senior commander. . . . .

428. Engineer preparation of the departure area for landing includes the following: engineer reconnaissance of the terrain, the construction of shelters for personnel, for combat equipment and for other materiel, and of water supply points and structures for headquarters; also the preparation of roads and the camouflaging of troops.

429. Protection of troops against weapons of mass destruction includes the following: radiation, chemical and bacteriological reconnaissance; notification of troops; dispersal and camouflage of troops and making use of the protective features of the terrain; carrying out medical and hygienic and special prophylactic measures; elimination of the effects of the enemy's use of weapons of mass destruction; providing the troops with protective devices and ensuring that they make use of them in good time.

Individual means of protection and instruments for radiation and chemical reconnaissance are landed at the same time as the personnel, while degassing sets ready for use are landed together with combat equipment.

Partial medical treatment of the personnel, decontamination and degassing of arms, equipment, and clothing during combat operations are carried out on the instructions of unit c. C. O.'s without impeding the execution of the combat task.

430. Readiness for the airborne landing is determined by the senior commander. . . . .

By this time troops must be in the assembly areas, ready to move out to airfields for loading and embarking in aircraft. The combat task is usually conveyed down to NCOs and enlisted men before they move to airfields for embarkation in aircraft.

3. Conduct of Combat Operations

431. In conducting combat operations in the enemy's rear area, the division (regiment) must use widely [one line missing] of aviation, act resolutely and boldly, deliver surprise and swift strikes against the enemy's flanks and rear and destroy him before he can put up any organized resistance; it must defend captured areas firmly and fight when encircled by superior enemy forces.

Operations from various axes, outflanking and enveloping movements to deliver strikes from the flanks and the rear, are the main ways in which units (subunits) operate in the enemy's rear area.

Airborne operations and combat operations at night constitute the usual form of operations by the division (regiment). Night facilitates the surprise appearance of troops in the enemy's rear area and helps to confuse him about the real landing area and the strength of the troops that have been landed; it also facilitates the execution of tasks with minimum losses.

The speed with which troops are brought to combat readiness and the immediate launching of combat operations by them are of decisive significance for the successful fulfilment of the combat task.

432. The combat operations of the division (regiment) in the enemy's rear area begin immediately after the landing, in accordance with the plan laid down, taking into account the local situation.

The subunits detailed for reconnaissance move up quickly to the objectives which are to be seized, define the enemy's forces and their composition by reconnaissance in force, determine the most favorable axes for emerging on the enemy's flanks and in his rear area, and also detect the enemy's reserves moving up to the area of the division's (regiment's) combat operations, especially his tanks.

After landing, the divisional (regimental) C. O. immediately establishes communications with the C. O. of subordinate units (subunits) and with the senior commander; on the basis of information received during the flight, from existing reconnaissance and from subunits which have landed first, he clarifies the combat tasks to units (subunits) and takes steps to muster them quickly and move them up in good time to capture objectives.

The personnel of subunits bring themselves to combat readiness quickly and in response to signals from C. O.'s of companies and battalions assemble on the axes of their further operations. Combat equipment is collected by teams, is brought to combat readiness, and directed to its units (subunits).

On those landing strips where the enemy is putting up resistance to the mustering of troops, platoons, companies, and combat equipment teams, without waiting for orders from the senior commander, attack and destroy the enemy nearest to them, and after that link up with their own subunits.

As the units (subunits) muster and assume combat (approach march) formation, they move forward swiftly to the objectives which they are to seize and attack the enemy resolutely. The attack is usually launched from various axes.

The move to the objectives is carried out quickly and stealthily, and with the implementation of reconnaissance and protective measures, and on axes which lead to the [illegible] flanks and rear [one line missing] of the enemy, to forestall him in taking up a defensive position, the troops can move up in motor transport or as a landing force on assault guns.

Reserves are employed to repel the enemy's counterattacks, to increase the power of the strike, to exploit success, and also to secure the flanks and the rear area.

Covering subunits quickly occupy the lines (areas) allotted to them in readiness to repel enemy counterattacks, especially of his tanks.

In seizing objectives, bold and daring operations by small subunits and wide display of initiative by all C. O.'s are of special importance.

433. When landing at night, as a rule, subunits and units proceed to muster areas which are selected near the landing strips of subunits on the axis of their approach to the objectives which are to be attacked and, as far as possible, in places where there are reference points which are clearly visible at night.

The mustering of personnel and of equipment is carried out with the help of radiotechnical and night vision equipment.

In the muster areas, the C. O.'s of units and subunits bring subunits to combat readiness, clarify the tasks, and send out reconnaissance and covering parties. Subunits should remain in muster areas for a short time only.

434. When objectives are being captured, the artillery destroys and neutralizes the enemy's fire weapons and manpower; it neutralizes artillery and mortars that have been spotted, prevents counterattacks by the enemy's tanks and infantry, and the approach of his reserves.

While objectives are being seized, a large part of the artillery uses direct-laying fire and operates in the combat formations of rifle subunits.

Subunits of assault guns are employed for direct close support of the offensive of rifle subunits, and operate in their combat formations.

435. From the beginning of the parachute drop, aircraft provide cover for the division against strikes from the enemy in the air, destroy and neutralize his manpower, artillery, and tanks which are hindering the capture of objectives, carry out reconnaissance, and deliver strikes against the enemy's reserves moving up.

While the division is fighting, aircraft operate mainly when called for from the airfields where they are on alert. The divisional commanding officer sets or clarifies the tasks for aircraft through the aviation representative within the limitations of the flying resources (letnyy resurs) laid down by the commander of troops of the front.

436. When fighting is going on for the capture of objectives, antitank weapons are disposed in such a way that they can repel a possible attack by enemy tanks from any axis. For this, it is essential that assault guns, PTURS (antitank guided missiles), and subunits of engineer troops with means to set up obstacles should operate in the combat formations of subunits carrying out the attack and of subunits detailed to cover the flanks and rear area; it is also essential to reinforce reconnaissance forces on the flanks and in the rear in good time, to make provision for deployment lines for the antitank reserve, and to set up mine-field obstacles on axes threatened by tanks.

437. The division's (regiment's) antiaircraft subunits, in collaboration with fighter aircraft, destroy the enemy in the air, repel his strikes against the troops, and prevent him from conducting aerial reconnaissance, while concentrating their main efforts on covering the command posts and the units and subunits operating on the main axis.

In the cases when the airborne landing is carried out in several runs, antiaircraft subunits are landed on the first run, and after they have reached the ground, they are deployed in the areas of the landing strips to cover the troops to be landed on subsequent runs.

In all cases, antiaircraft artillery subunits must be ready to fire at the enemy's tanks.

Reconnaissance of the enemy in the air is conducted by the division's radar post and by visual observation. Units and subunits open and conduct fire independently.

438. When objectives are being captured, units and subunits of engineer troops reconnoiter routes on which troops can maneuver and move to the objectives to be attacked, they set up obstacles when counterattacks are being repelled, carry out demolitions on the most probable

routes which the enemy will use to move to the area of combat operations, and clear the seized areas of mines for the division (regiment) or for troops attacking from the front.

439. The division (regiment) in the enemy's rear area goes over to the defense to hold captured areas, bridgeheads, mountain passes and passages, and other important objectives until its own troops arrive.

For going over to the defense, the division (regiment) is allotted an area. The width of the front to be defended is determined by the combat task, the nature of the terrain, and also by the anticipated operations of the enemy.

The division's (regiment's) defense is organized on axes and takes the form of independent company and platoon strong points, and in some cases — of battalion areas with gaps between them, combined with vigorous operations by part of the forces and the extensive use of obstacles on the approach routes of the enemy troops, as well as with bold counterattacks. Every area of defense and strong point must be adapted for all-around defense and, if possible, should be able to lay down intersecting fire with adjacent strong points (areas of defense).

Strong points and areas of defense are disposed in such a way that they should be able to bring their fire to bear on the enemy's most probable movement routes.

In the gaps between strong points and areas of defense, mine fields are arranged, ambushes are organized, security detachments are sent out, and reconnaissance is conducted continuously. They must also be covered by artillery fire from the depth.

Reserves are disposed in areas which ensure that the troops can reach the main axes quickly to deliver strikes against the enemy's flanks and rear area or to occupy tactically advantageous lines.

To gain time, to wear down the enemy while he is approaching the area of defense, and to confuse him about its real forward edge, forward detachments composed of a reinforced company (battalion) may be parachuted from aircraft during the airborne operation or may be sent out, after they have landed, to a distance of 20 km and more from the forward edge of the defense.

440. As a rule, the switch to the defense is done under enemy pressure and is organized in an extremely short time.

A defense is set up first of all by part of the forces, which seize tactically important lines and points immediately after the troops have landed. Subsequently, as the enemy is destroyed in the landing area and as the designated objectives are seized, the area of defense is

extended, and the rest of the division's (regiment's) forces shift to the defense.

The forward edge of the defense is selected with a view to making use of natural lines and local objects, facilitating the planning of a system of fire.

The system of fire in defense is organized on the basis of fire collaboration from all kinds of weapons, and a system of obstacles. It must provide for the repulse of enemy tank assaults from any axis, the concentration of massed fire quickly on any threatened axis, covering fire for gaps and open flanks, the laying down of flanking fire, crossfire, and surprise fire at very close range (kinzhalnyy ogon) on the approaches to and in the depth of the defense, and it must also provide for rapid switching of fire by fire weapons.

441. Antitank defense is organized for the whole depth of the area being defended on the axes threatened by tanks. Besides the usual measures, when the division (regiment) is in defense in the enemy's rear area, special importance attaches to ambushes against tanks on axes threatened by them, on the approaches to the area of defense, in the battalion areas of defense, and also in the gaps between them.

Firing positions for artillery are selected on axes threatened by tanks.

Subunits of assault guns form the basis of the division's (regiment's) antitank reserves.

442. The sequence of the work for engineer preparation of the terrain is determined by the commanding officer. Usually, in the first place, mine-field obstacles are set up on the most threatened axes in front of the strong points (areas of defense) and in the gaps between them; demolitions are carried out and obstructions are arranged on the approaches to the defense; the personnel dig themselves in and local objects are adapted for defense; trenches are dug for rifle sections, which are then joined by communication trenches to form platoon positions; pits are dug for guns, mortars, and assault guns, and structures are set up for control points and communications centers.

Subsequently, the main positions in strong points (areas of defense) are extended and consolidated, and alternate positions for artillery and assault guns, as well as deployment lines for the antitank reserve, are also equipped; the system of obstacles is extended, and movement routes for the troops are prepared.

443. Action against the enemy moving up to the division's (regiment's) area of defense is started in the distant approaches.

The forward detachments of the division and of regiments, operating from ambushes and carrying out raids on and delivering surprise strikes against enemy columns, force the enemy to deploy, wear him down, inflict losses on him, and create favorable conditions to deliver strikes against the enemy with nuclear weapons and by aircraft.

As soon as the enemy goes into the attack, artillery and rifle subunits concentrate their fire first of all on beating off the enemy's tanks, cut off his infantry from the tanks, and annihilate it. Artillery and aircraft also deliver strikes against the combat formations of the advancing enemy and his reserve.

If the enemy drives a wedge into the defense, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer, by making use of all his fire weapons and by setting up obstacles, must stop the enemy troops from spreading along the front and into the depth; he must prevent the arrival of the enemy reserves and must destroy the enemy by decisive strikes by his reserves from the flanks and rear area.

As the troops operating from the front approach, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer establishes communications with the commanding officers of units and large units arriving in the division's (regiment's) area of combat operations and clarifies the combat tasks, the time, the procedure for linking up, and the mutual recognition signals.

After linking up with the troops operating from the front, the division (regiment) carries out the tasks set by the senior commander.

444. The move of the division (regiment) in the enemy's rear area to another area of combat operations is undertaken in order to fulfil new tasks and to withdraw the troops from being subjected to an enemy strike.

The move must be carried out quickly and stealthily, must come as a surprise to the enemy, and as a rule should take place at night and under conditions of limited visibility.

As a rule the move is started when part of the division's (regiment's) forces are fighting the enemy. The withdrawal from combat is carried out under cover of units (subunits) assigned for this purpose, which continue to hold the positions they have occupied for the period of time laid down by the commanding officer.

When the division (regiment) is being moved, the grouping of forces and weapons must be such as to ensure that units and subunits can go on fighting independently during the move. For this purpose, artillery, subunits of assault guns, and subunits of special troops are attached to regiments (battalions) and operate in their columns.

As a rule, the units (subunits) move along several routes, circumventing large road junctions and inhabited places, taking advantage of folds in the ground and of natural cover. Each column must have security detachments ahead, in the rear area and on the flanks. To accelerate the move, use is made of all the available means of transport, including transport captured from the enemy.

445. Bridgeheads and crossings over water obstacles are seized and held with the aim of helping the troops attacking from the front to cross them from the march.

The division (regiment) is usually parachuted onto sectors of the terrain adjoining a river. In those cases when the enemy has taken up a defensive position on the river in good time, nuclear strikes are delivered before the troops are dropped.

The size of the bridgehead to be seized is determined by its purpose, the extent to which there is protection against weapons of mass destruction, the state of the terrain, and the situation. It must afford protection for the troops that are crossing, from enemy ground observation and from direct-laying artillery [illegible] fire.

The terrain in the area of the bridgehead must facilitate the organization of a firm defense, above all against tanks, while stretches of the water obstacle must be convenient to arrange crossings.

When crossings exist at the water obstacle, as a rule the division (regiment) is parachuted onto both banks of the water obstacle, and its main force is dropped to seize the bridgehead.

To capture existing crossings and to prevent their destruction by the enemy, subunits prepared for this purpose are dropped into the immediate neighborhood of the crossings.

On the axis of the enemy's probable approach to the bridgehead, forward detachments may be parachuted (sent out) from the division (regiment).

446. During combat operations to capture a bridgehead, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer concentrates his main efforts on the fastest possible capture of commanding heights, dams, stone buildings, and defensive structures on the bank, the loss of which would deprive the enemy of the possibility of keeping the crossings under fire.

After landing, subunits detailed to seize crossings break through swiftly to them, attack and destroy the security detachments, seize bridges, moorings, ferries, and other amphibious equipment, consolidate their hold on them, and prevent their destruction by the enemy. As a rule, strong pockets of resistance are blockaded and outflanked. Their destruction is accomplished after the subunits have reached the water obstacle.

As the tasks of destroying the enemy are accomplished, units (subunits) go over to the defense of the bridgehead in the indicated areas. When there are no crossings, defense of the bridgehead is usually organized on one bank of the water obstacle.

447. Subunits of engineer troops, in addition to their normal tasks of supporting combat operations, clear the captured crossings of mines and maintain them in working order, carry out engineer reconnaissance of the water obstacle and of the approaches to it with the aim of finding suitable places for the troops advancing from the front to cross the water obstacle; they equip the approaches to the water obstacle and the banks for the crossing, gather together local crossing equipment for the needs of the division (regiment), and organize the protection of the crossings against floating mines.

If the enemy has a naval flotilla at his disposal, subunits of engineer troops set up obstacles in the river.

448. Before the troops attacking from the front approach, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer sends them information about the enemy, the nature of the water obstacle and the approaches to it, the state of the captured crossings and of the local crossing equipment, the sectors which are convenient for the arranging of crossings, including the crossing of tanks submerged, and about the routes for reaching the river.

When the forward units of the attacking troops reach the bridgehead, the commanding officer takes steps to help them to cross the water obstacle. After the attacking troops have crossed the bridgehead, the division (regiment) fulfils tasks set by the senior commander.

449. Depending on the size of the islands, the forces of the enemy, and the nature of the defense, the capture of islands is accomplished by the division (regiment) independently or in a combined operation with a seaborne landing force.

When an island is to be captured independently, forces and weapons are distributed in a way to ensure the rapid capture, first of all, of those objectives the loss of which would sharply reduce the aggressiveness and steadiness of the enemy's defense and would facilitate the rapid capture of the whole island. Part of the forces are

assigned to disrupt communications, to blow up objectives on lines of communication, to create panic, and for other kinds of sabotage action.

In seizing an island in a combined operation with a seaborne landing force, the division (regiment) captures important areas and road junctions in the depth of the island or on its coast with the aim of preventing the enemy from moving his reserves, and also to secure the landing of the seaborne landing force.

450. During combat operations, the commanding officer moves his forces and weapons with a view to cutting off and isolating the independent garrisons and to seizing important objectives as quickly as possible.

As the objectives are captured, units (subunits) go over to the defense. In the first place, defense is organized in those areas where the enemy can carry out airborne (seaborne) landings. On stretches of coastline which it is difficult to reach, security detachments, patrolling, and observation are organized.

The division's (regiment's) main forces are disposed on the main axis in readiness for vigorous operations to annihilate enemy airborne and seaborne landings.

451. When securing the landing of a seaborne landing force, the division (regiment) [five words missing] to hold sectors of the coast in the area where the seaborne landing is to take place or to prevent the enemy's reserves from approaching the area where the seaborne landing is to be made.

In fulfilling tasks for the capture of sectors of the seacoast, the division (regiment) destroys missile launching sites, coastal artillery firing positions, strong points, and defensive structures situated on the coast and, above all, the fire weapons which are hindering the landing of the seaborne landing force, control points, and communications centers.

To prevent the enemy's reserves from approaching the area where the seaborne landing has taken place, the division (regiment) seizes and holds areas in the depth of the coastal strip on the enemy's main movement routes.

452. Units and large units of the navy may fulfil the following tasks for the division (regiment):

— neutralize with nuclear and other weapons of destruction objectives in the enemy's coastal defense during the landing operation and during combat operati[illegible];

- cover the seized sectors of coastline (island) against strikes by enemy warships and against enemy seaborne landing operations;

- blockade ports that have not been occupied, anchorages for warships, and sectors where the enemy could conveniently land troops;

- help parachutists who are forced to bail out of aircraft over the sea (rescue service);

- deliver materiel, and combat equipment, and evacuate the sick and wounded.

453. In mountainous country airborne forces are used mainly to seize and hold mountain passes, passages, road junctions, and other important areas with the aim of helping the troops attacking from the front to cross these areas quickly and of preventing the approach (withdrawal) of the enemy through these areas.

The most widely used kind of landing force in mountainous country is a regiment or a battalion. A division may be employed for the simultaneous capture of several mountain passes or of an important area (road junction) in the enemy's deep rear area.

When operating in mountainous country, units and subunits must be capable of fulfilling combat tasks independently for a considerable period of time. For this, they are reinforced with combat engineers and artillery and are provided with additional stocks of materiel.

In mountainous country, landings are made onto a limited number of landing strips. As landing strips, use can be made of gentle slopes on the sides of mountains, of mountain plateaus, of valleys and, under winter conditions, of frozen lakes.

If the landing strips are below the area of combat operations, then heavy freight can be dropped directly onto the area to be seized after the units have reached it.

454. The operations of units (subunits) in seizing airfields depend on the state of the ground and the antiair defense of the airfields, and also on the extent to which it is neutralized before the airborne landing takes place.

In conformity with this, airfields may be seized by units (subunits) dropped directly onto the airfield or some distance from it, the troops then moving to it.

When seizing an airfield, the objectives for the operations of the troops are ground and antiair defense weapons, aircraft, control points, communications centers, radiotechnical equipment, and depots of ammunition and fuel.

After landing, subunits assigned to seize airfields, immediately move to their allotted objectives, attack the enemy resolutely, and seize the targets quickly. An important role is played in this by subunits of assault guns which, operating as a component part of rifle subunits, attack first of all the enemy's fire weapons and his aircraft.

To prepare a landing strip on which one's own aircraft can land, the commanding officer assigns combat engineer and rifle subunits with the necessary means. First of all, the take off and landing strip is cleared of damaged equipment and craters in it are filled in.

455. The capture and destruction of the enemy's nuclear and other weapons of mass destruction may be carried out by units specially assigned for this purpose, as well as by units which are carrying out other tasks in the enemy's rear area. In all cases when a division (regiment) is parachuted into the enemy's rear area, provision must be made for the reconnaissance and annihilation of nuclear and other weapons of mass destruction.

The objectives to be attacked by units (subunits) may be the following:

— artillery weapons for nuclear attack, guided missiles and free rockets, delivery aircraft, and winged missiles;

— depots and bases for the assembly and storage of nuclear ammunition and other weapons of mass destruction, components of fuel for missiles, and also the launch pads (launchers) of missile weapons;

— radiotechnical means for guiding missile weapons.

456. In making a decision to seize and destroy nuclear attack weapons, besides the usual matters, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer determines the composition of the subunits which are to undertake these tasks, of the subunits which are to act as covering troops, of the reserves and their task, as well as the areas in which the troops are to assemble after fulfilling the task and the sequence of subsequent operations.

Subunits detailed to seize and destroy nuclear targets, after landing move stealthily to their allocated objectives, without getting involved in fighting with security subunits, and attack the enemy from

the [redacted]. Captured atomic artillery, launchers, components of fuel, launch pads, and nuclear charges, depending on the tasks, are put out of action, blown up, or prepared for evacuation.

After seizing and destroying their objective, subunits move to the assembly areas.

The capture and destruction of nuclear weapons and other weapons of mass destruction while they are on the move is accomplished by subunits undertaking surprise operations from ambushes and by raids.

457. Disruption of the enemy's control of troops and the working of his rear services is a constant task in all forms of the division's (regiment's) combat operations in the enemy's rear area. In some cases, units may be parachuted for the specific task of disrupting the enemy's control of troops and the work of his rear services.

Disruption of the enemy's control of troops is achieved by destroying headquarters and by demolishing centers and lines of communications, radio stations, and radar sets.

Disruption of the working of the enemy's rear services is achieved by the destruction of the most important objectives in the enemy's rear area, of depots and materiel bases, his railroad junctions and bridges, and by damaging railroads and roads, lines of communication, industrial enterprises, power plants, pipelines, and other objectives, as well as by breaking up the movement of transport on the enemy's communication routes.

458. In setting tasks to disrupt the enemy's control of troops and the work of his rear services, the following are usually laid down:

— the objectives and the order in which they are to be destroyed;

— the procedure for collaboration with other units operating in the enemy's rear area;

— the procedure for maintaining communications;

— the nature of subsequent operations.

459. After landing, the division's (regiment's) rear services collect supplies quickly and concentrate in their allotted areas in readiness to replenish the supplies of units and subunits immediately, and also to receive the sick and wounded.

Areas for the disposition of rear units and subunits are selected near roads, if possible in places which are inaccessible for tanks and where there is cover against observation from the air.

During combat operations, supplies are delivered by specially assigned units of military transport aircraft from supply airfields, the supplies being dropped, as a rule, by parachute. On receiving information that the aircraft have taken off, reception parties are concentrated in advance on the drop zones to collect and transport the supplies.

When supplies are delivered by the landing method, as a rule, landing strips are prepared in areas which are not susceptible to enemy ground observation.

CHAPTER 11

Pursuit

460. Pursuit may arise as a result of the unsuccessful outcome for the enemy of a meeting engagement, of a successful development of the offensive by our troops in the depth of the enemy's defense, or in the event of premeditated withdrawal by the enemy.

The rout of a withdrawing enemy is achieved by attacking his main forces with tactical missiles, aircraft strikes, and artillery fire, and also by employing the pursuing troops to split him up and deliver strikes in collaboration with an airborne landing.

The pursuit of the enemy is carried out frontally and from the flanks, at as fast a rate as possible and with the straining of every effort, on routes parallel with those of his withdrawal, as many routes as possible being used.

461. The enemy's withdrawal is usually done by surprise disengagement from our troops; consequently, his retreat can only be detected if continuous reconnaissance is carried out by commanding officers and headquarters of all arms of troops. When an enemy withdrawal has been detected, additional reconnaissance is organized, including reconnaissance in force, which must establish when the enemy's main forces start to withdraw and the routes taken by them; the strength, composition, and axis of operations of the enemy's rear guards; the preparation and possible occupation by enemy troops of defensive lines in the depth; the presence and nature of obstructions and obstacles on the axes of pursuit; and the sectors of terrain contaminated by radioactive and toxic substances.

462. On receiving information that the enemy is preparing to withdraw, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer is obliged to do the following: set tasks for additional reconnaissance of the enemy; create the essential grouping of forces and weapons and to set tasks to units (subunits) for going over to a resolute offensive with the immediate task of breaking through and reaching with the main forces, especially tanks, routes parallel to the enemy's withdrawal and which lead to the enemy's flanks and lines of communication; determine the composition and the axes of operations of advance guards and columns of main forces, and of tactical airborne forces; and to coordinate their operations with strikes by tactical missiles, with artillery fire, and with aircraft operations.

463. The division (regiment) goes over to the offensive independently, the decision made by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer being reported at the same time by him to the army commander (divisional commanding officer).

The frontal pursuit of the retreating enemy is carried out by part of the division's (regiment's) forces with the necessary support. The division's (regiment's) main forces overtake the enemy swiftly along parallel routes, come out on his flanks, cut off the routes by which his main forces are withdrawing, and, by resolute strikes from the flanks and rear, destroy them piecemeal.

464. Units (subunits) pursuing the enemy from the front destroy his covering subunits by resolute operations and, exploiting the intervals and gaps in the enemy's combat formation, break through swiftly to his main forces, and, in collaboration with troops pursuing the enemy on parallel routes, destroy them.

465. In pursuit, the tank regiment (battalion) is employed mainly for deep penetration of the enemy's routes of withdrawal.

During the pursuit, the tank regiment (battalion) breaks swiftly through the movement protection troops and, moving through the gaps between the retreating columns, quickly attains the enemy's routes of withdrawal and destroys his main forces by resolute operations.

466. To seize crossings over water obstacles, road junctions, and other important objectives on the enemy's routes of withdrawal, forward detachments are detailed from the units pursuing the enemy on paralled routes.

The forward detachments, without involving themselves in fighting with the enemy's covering troops and retreating units (subunits), swiftly reach the enemy's routes of withdrawal and, by resolute operations carried out independently or in collaboration with a tactical airborne landing, seize the allotted objectives and help the division's (regiment's) main forces to surround and destroy the retreating columns and reserves of the enemy.

467. The enemy's reserves which are moving up or counterattacking are attacked with nuclear weapons, artillery fire, and strikes by aircraft, and are destroyed by part of the division's (regiment's) forces.

In the cases when the enemy has managed to disengage from the pursuing units (subunits) and to set up a defense on an intermediate line, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer organizes a breakthrough of the defense from the march.

468. Tactical missiles are used to destroy the main forces of the retreating enemy, his nuclear weapons, and his reserves which are moving up. Strikes are delivered against concentrations of enemy troops when they pass through defiles, gorges, and over crossings, with the object of holding up his withdrawal and the approach of fresh reserves.

Artillery destroys and neutralizes with its fire the manpower and fire weapons of covering units; it fires at the retreating enemy when he is passing through road junctions and gorges, over crossings and bridges; it prevents the approach of his reserves and hinders the setting up of a defense on intermediate lines.

Chemical weapons are used in the pursuit against the retreating groupings and reserves of the enemy, and also for contaminating road junctions, defiles, and crossings on his routes of withdrawal.

Antiaircraft units (subunits), moving directly in the columns or in the combat formations of units (subunits), cover the division's (regiment's) tactical missiles, artillery and main forces.

469. Aircraft deliver bombing and attack strikes against the enemy's means of mass destruction, his retreating groupings and reserves, especially his leading (advance guards) retreating columns, and they also support the operations of forward detachments and tactical airborne forces, as well as carrying out continuous reconnaissance of the enemy.

470. The division's (regiment's) engineer subunits, operating as component parts of reconnaissance and forward detachments and of tactical airborne landings, conduct engineer reconnaissance, carry out demolitions, and set up mine field obstacles on the enemy's routes of withdrawal, and also provide support for the capture and holding of important objectives (areas, lines).

Movement protection detachments lay cross-country routes, clear roads and restore bridges on the division's (regiment's) axes of operations and together with landing and crossing subunits (desantno-perepravochnoye podrazdeleniye) provide support for the forcing of water obstacles from the march.

The division's mobile obstacle detachment moves, together with advance guards, on the main axis in readiness to set up mine field obstacles on the enemy's routes of withdrawal and on the routes of counterattacks by his tanks.

471. During the pursuit, the divisional commanding officer controls his units from the mobile forward command post, and the regimental commanding officer — from the mobile command post.

When the pursuing units (subunits) close up into columns, the division's forward command post (regiment's command post) moves at the head of the column of main forces or with the advance guards.

When the division (regiment) deploys into combat formation, the division's forward command post (regiment's command post) is located behind the units (subunits) of the first echelon in a position from which the divisional (regimental) commanding officer can observe the operations of units (subunits) on the main axis.

472. During the pursuit, part of the transport with ammunition and fuel, as well as medical subunits and repair services, move behind the division 's (regiment's) main forces. The rest of the rear units (subunits) move in the columns on the axis of operations of the main forces.

CHAPTER 12

Defense

1. General Principles

473. The aim of defense is to repel the offensive of superior enemy forces, to inflict considerable losses on the enemy, and to hold important areas of ground, and thereby to create favorable conditions for going over to a decisive offensive.

Defense enables one to win time, to economize forces and weapons on some axes, and to create conditions for an offensive on others.

474. Modern defense is based first of all on powerful fire strikes from all kinds of weapons, on broad maneuver of fire, [illegible] forces and weapons, and on counter-attacks, while at the same time holding on stubbornly to important areas which intersect the enemy's probable axes of the offensive, as well as on the extensive use of obstacles.

The use by defending troops of nuclear and chemical weapons enables one not only to repel an offensive by superior enemy forces, but to break up an enemy attack which is being prepared or which has started by inflicting defeat on his main grouping and by going over from defense to an offensive in a short space of time.

475. The defense must be firm and vigorous, anti-nuclear and antitank, capable of withstanding strikes from the enemy's nuclear and other weapons of mass destruction, his aircraft and artillery, of repelling massed attacks by the enemy's tanks, of preventing the landing and operations of airborne forces, and if the enemy drives a wedge into the defense — of destroying him.

This is achieved by the following:

— timely detection and immediate destruction of the enemy's weapons of mass destruction; detecting and inflicting defeat on his main grouping by nuclear weapons and fire of all kinds in the distant approaches, in front of the forward edge, and in the depth of the defense;

— organization of the defense in great depth and in a varied way, skilful use of the terrain, engineer

preparation of it, and camouflaging it thoroughly with the aim of confusing the enemy about the real nature of the defense;

— a cleverly planned system of fire, above all of antitank fire, in combination with a system of mine fields and other obstacles, and also by quick restoration of a system of fire that has broken down;

— dispersed and concealed disposition of forces and weapons, their broad maneuver onto threatened axes, and the conduct of swift counterattacks;

— reliable protection of troops against weapons of mass destruction and the ability on the part of the troops to operate for a long time on contaminated terrain;

— endurance, steadiness, and stubbornness on the part of the defending troops;

— firm and skilful troop control, timely planning and continuous maintenance of collaboration, quick restoration of a defense system that has broken down, and comprehensive support for the combat operations of troops.

Defending troops have no right to leave the areas (positions) they occupy and to withdraw without an order to this effect from the senior commander. . . . . They must be ready to operate without being in tactical contact with adjacent troops and when encircled.

476. For defense, the division is allotted a defense zone (polosa oborony), a regiment — a defense sector (uchastok oborony), and a battalion — a defense area (rayon oborony).

The width of the front in defense is determined by the availability of nuclear weapons, the division's (regiment's) task, its composition, and the nature of the terrain.

In defense, the width of the division's defense zone on the main axis may reach 20 to 30 km; of a regiment's defense sector — about 10 km; and of a battalion's defense area — about 5 km.

In defending terrain not all of which is accessible for the operations of troops, and in defending a seacoast, the

width of the division's (regiment's) front in defense can be even greater.

The depth of the defensive layout must provide for an increase of resistance against the enemy, for freedom of maneuver by troops, especially of second echelons and reserves, and for the disposition of all units (subunits) in dispersed order with the aim of protecting them against weapons of mass destruction. It can be: for the division — 15 to 20 km, for a regiment — 7 to 10 km, and for a battalion — about 3 km.

In defense, the motorized rifle, tank (heavy tank) division (regiment) can be in the first or in the second echelon, and also in the reserve.

The division which is in the second echelon (reserve) prepares and takes up a defensive position on the most important axis or is disposed, concealed, and dispersed, in a given area in readiness to launch counterattacks (counterstrikes) or to maneuver onto threatened axes.

477. The grouping of the division's (regiment's) forces and weapons and the layout of its defense must conform to the combat task, the features of the terrain, and the nature of impending operations, and must provide for a firm defense, decisive destruction of the enemy, especially his tanks, the firm holding of important areas of terrain, and possibilities for maneuvering forces and weapons and launching counterattacks.

In each case, the grouping of forces and weapons and the layout of the defense must be different, must not fall into a definite scheme or pattern, must confuse the enemy, and must induce him to deliver nuclear strikes against areas which are not occupied by troops.

478. The division's (regiment's) combat formation, depending on the situation, may consist of two or one echelons, and the smaller or larger part of the forces and weapons may be detailed to form the division's (regiment's) first echelon.

The tank regiment of a motorized rifle division is usually employed in the second echelon and occupies a defense sector on the most important axis in readiness to launch a counterattack or to repel enemy tank attacks from prepared firing lines. In some cases, the tank regiment may be used in the first echelon; then, as a rule, it is reinforced by motorized rifle subunits.

The tank battalion of a motorized rifle regiment usually constitutes the regimental tank reserve and occupies a defense area in the depth in readiness to launch counterattacks, to repel enemy tank attacks from prepared firing lines, and also to close breaches which have arisen as a result of nuclear attacks. If necessary, part of the tanks may be attached to motorized rifle battalions to strengthen their antitank defense.

Tank subunits of the tank regiment, and of tank battalions of motorized rifle regiments, which are outside the limits of the first position, must be prepared to fire from concealed firing positions.

479. The layout of the defense must conform to the divisional (regimental) commanding officer's plan and the features of the terrain, and it must provide for increasing the weight of fire and of resistance against the enemy and for the possibility of drawing him into prepared pockets of fire, and it must destroy him by powerful fire strikes from all types of weapons and by counterattacks.

The division's defense zone includes several positions, switch positions, siting areas of missile subunits, firing positions of artillery and tanks, positions for antiaircraft units (subunits) and antitank reserves, and a system of obstacles.

In the regiment's defense sector in the first echelon, two or three positions are prepared.

The forward edge of each position is selected along a line which has the greatest number of natural antitank obstructions and which facilitates the setting up of obstacles both on the forward as well as on the reverse slopes of heights, avoiding outstanding local objects and any kind of a pattern. The forward edge of the defense is usually fixed by the army commander and made more precise on the ground by the divisional commanding officer. The number of positions in the defense zone and their demarcation are determined by the divisional commanding officer.

As a rule, positions are selected behind natural antitank obstructions. The demarcation of the positions must ensure good observation of the enemy and delivery of fire in front of the forward edge, on the flanks, and in the gaps. The terrain in front of the positions should make observation difficult for the enemy and should impede the deployment of his troops for an offensive.

The distance between positions depends on the nature of the terrain. It must vary greatly and at the same time must exclude the possibility that troops occupying two adjacent positions may be put out of action simultaneously by a hit by one nuclear warhead of medium yield.

Depending on the situation and the features of the terrain, the main efforts of the defending troops may be concentrated on positions which vary in depth.

With the aim of confusing the enemy and reducing the effectiveness of his fire strikes, it is essential to avoid straight lines in the demarcation of positions and trenches, to create alternate and dummy areas and positions, to avoid disposing subunits on the summits of heights and other points which stand out sharply, while filling the latter with dummy defensive structures and preparing to lay down fire on them, as well as to put into effect continuously measures for concealment.

The basis of each position consists of company strong points inserted in the positions, and in certain cases also battalion areas, between which gaps of one to two km are permitted.

The disposition of company strong points and of battalion defense areas in the positions must be such that they can lay down intersecting fire on the enemy's most probable axes of an offensive.

Strong points are fitted out with trenches, communication trenches, shelters, and other defensive structures, and strong points of tank subunits — with trenches for tanks and for attached motorized rifle subunits. They must be prepared for all-around defense and above all for combating enemy tanks, must be well camouflaged and interconnected along the front and into the depth by a single system of fire, by obstacles, and, if possible, by trenches and communication trenches.

480. With the aim of confusing the enemy about the layout of the defense, of securing the first position against a surprise attack by the enemy, of repelling his reconnaissance in force and thus compelling him to deploy his forces prematurely, a forward position may be set up three to five km in front of the forward edge of the defense zone.

The forward position is selected usually behind natural obstructions and has such engineer preparation that

it is indistinguishable from other positions in the defense zone. An extensive system of engineer obstacles is created at the forward position.

For the defense of the forward position, reinforced rifle (tank) subunits are detailed from regiments of the first echelon, which set up company and platoon strong points prepared for all-around defense.

When there is no forward position, each battalion in the first echelon sends out combat outposts to secure the subunits defending the first position against surprise enemy attacks and to prevent the enemy from carrying out reconnaissance. Under conditions of direct contact with the enemy, the tasks of combat outposts devolve on the subunits which occupy the first trench of the first position.

Under favorable conditions, expecially when troops are not in direct contact with the enemy, a security zone about 15 km in depth may be created in front of the division's defense zone; the security zone is defended by forward detachments composed of reinforced motorized rifle (tank) subunits with the aim of delaying the enemy's offensive, of compelling him to deploy and to attack on an axis that is unfavorable for him, and also with the aim of detecting the enemy's grouping and intentions. The forward detachments cover the most important axes, making extensive use of obstacles and carrying out demolition. They are supported by fire from artillery and tanks firing from concealed firing positions, as well as by aircraft strikes. Control of the forward detachments is exercised by the divisional commanding officer.

Reconnaissance in front of the security zone is carried out by the forces and means of the division and of regiments in the first echelon.

481. The system of fire in defense consists of the preparation of fire strikes by missile subunits, artillery, and tanks at the approaches to the defense and of creating zones of continuous fire from all kinds of weapons in front of the forward edge, on the flanks, and in the depth of the defense; it also consists of concentrating fire quickly on any threatened axis or defense sector. The system is arranged on the basis of close collaboration between nuclear and chemical strikes, fire from all kinds of weapons, and strikes by aircraft, in combination with a system of engineer obstacles and natural obstructions.

The system of fire must ensure the following:

— the destruction of the enemy's nuclear attack weapons, and the bombardment of his troops in their concentration areas, when they are moving up and when they are on their deployment lines, or in their departure areas for the offensive;

— support for the subunits which are defending the forward position, and also the security zone;

— the repelling of massed attacks by the enemy's tanks and infantry;

— destruction of the enemy who has driven a wedge into the defense, and the provision of powerful preparatory and supporting fire for units (subunits) during counterattacks;

— laying down of fire in gaps and on the flanks, and also covering fire for engineer obstacles and natural obstructions.

Effectiveness of fire in defense is achieved by its accurate, massed, and surprise use.

With the aim of laying down massed fire in short spaces of time against the most important enemy groupings on the approaches to the defense, on the flanks, and in the gaps between units, areas under fire (fire pockets) may be created in advance, and concentrated and barrage fire are planned. The destruction of the enemy in these areas is achieved by powerful fire strikes from all kinds of weapons and by aircraft strikes.

Fire weapons should be disposed in a concealed and dispersed manner and in such a way that flanking fire, cross fire, and surprise fire at very close range, of great density, especially antitank fire, can be brought to bear on the enemy from reverse slopes of heights and from the depth.

All fire weapons must be ready for broad maneuver, and also for conducting fire at night and under conditions of limited visibility.

482. Antitank defense represents the basic factor in the defense of large units and units; consequently, its planning is one of the most important duties of all commanding

officers. The division's (regiment's) antitank defense is organized throughout the whole depth of the defense, and above all on the axes vulnerable to tanks.

The system of antitank defense includes the following: company strong points with antitank weapons disposed in them; tank ambushes; firing lines prepared for occupation by tank subunits and antitank reserves; tanks of second echelons and of reserves, and antitank reserves; artillery disposed on axes vulnerable to tanks; antitank obstacles.

The destruction of the enemy's tanks in their concentration areas and when they are moving up and deploying is achieved by nuclear strikes, by aircraft strikes, by concentrated and creeping barrage fire from artillery and tanks firing from concealed firing positions, and, in front of the forward edge and in the depth of the defense — by the fire of antitank guided missiles, of artillery and tanks using direct-laying fire, and of other weapons, in combination with antitank obstacles and natural obstructions.

The disposition of antitank weapons must ensure interconnected fire along the front and in depth, the possibility of switching fire, moving obstacles and conducting guided antitank fire, as well as minimum vulnerability to the enemy's fire. In this connection, guns, tanks, antitank guided missiles, and other antitank weapons should be disposed in such a way that they can lay down intersecting fire from the flanks and from the depth on axes vulnerable to tanks. Their disposition in line is not permitted.

483. In defense, reconnaissance must detect the enemy's main forces while they are still on the march and must establish the axis on which they are moving, their composition, and their concentration and deployment areas, especially of missile units, artillery, and tank troops; it must determine the places where control points and radiotechnical means are located; it must also detect preparations for, and the time for delivering, nuclear strikes and for the enemy's going over to the offensive.

During combat, reconnaissance must clarify the enemy's grouping, establish the approach of and the axis on which the enemy's reserves are to be committed to combat, and the landing of his airborne forces.

The fulfilment of these tasks is accomplished by use of all the various kinds of reconnaissance means and by a unified system of observation before the front, on the flanks, and in the gaps.

Deep reconnaissance groups are usually sent forward to the probable concentration areas of the enemy's main grouping. Reconnaissance groups are sent out onto the flanks and into the gaps of the enemy's combat formations.

When the division goes over to the defense, subunits of tactical radio reconnaissance occupy a position as close as possible to the forward edge of the defense on the probable axis of the offensive of the enemy's main forces.

484. The main tasks of engineer support for the defense are the following: preparation of positions and of firing lines; erection of structures for control points; contruction of engineer obstacles; preparation of routes; preparation and maintenance of crossings over water obstacles; obtaining and purifying water and maintaining water supply points; carrying out engineer measures to camouflage troops and objectives.

The system of engineer obstacles is created in combination with the system of fire and natural obstructions and taking into account the movement of one's own troops. It must conform to the plan of combat operations, must facilitate the infliction of considerable losses in manpower and equipment on the enemy, and the splitting up and driving of the enemy into areas favorable for the defense with the aim of destroying him by fire.

The system of obstacles is based on mine field obstacles and above all antitank mine fields covered by fire. Before combat starts, minefield obstacles are set up in front of the forward edge and in the gaps. Antitank mine fields in the depth of the defense are laid mainly during combat on the axes of the enemy's offensive; for this purpose the terrain is reconnoitered in advance and in conformity with the plan of combat, and taking into account the system of fire, the possible places and lines, and forces and means, for mine-laying are determined. On axes vulnerable to tanks, on which it is proposed to maneuver and to launch counterattacks, controlled mine fields (upravlyayemoye minnoye pole) are laid.

435. Missile units, artillery, and tanks, brought in to fire from concealed firing positions, are given the following tasks:

— attacking the enemy in his concentration areas, when he is moving up, and when he is deploying;

— participating in counterpreparation;

— repelling the attacks of enemy tanks and infantry in front of the forward edge of the defense;

— destroying the enemy who has driven a wedge into the defense and his reserves which are moving up;

— supporting the counterattacks of second echelons (reserves).

In fulfilling these tasks, missile units destroy the enemy's means of mass destruction, his tanks and manpower, his major control points, and other important objectives.

In addition, artillery and tanks brought in to fire from concealed firing positions neutralize the enemy's artillery, antiaircraft weapons, and radiotechnical means, provide covering fire for gaps, flanks, and breaches which have been caused by enemy nuclear strikes, support the subunits fighting in defense of the forward position, provide covering fire for engineer obstacles, and destroy the enemy's night vision equipment. The artillery is also given the task of illuminating the terrain.

To repel the attacks of the enemy's tanks and infantry in front of the forward edge and in the depth of the defense, concentrated fire and standing barrage fire are prepared. On the most important axes vulnerable to tanks in front of the forward edge, creeping barrage fire is prepared. The right to call for standing and creeping barrage fire to be laid down by supporting artillery (tanks) in front of their subunits (units) is granted to all commanding officers, from a battalion commanding officer upwards.

486. From organic and attached divisional artillery, battalion and regimental artillery groups are formed in regiments of the first echelon. While counterpreparation is being carried out and while enemy attacks are being repelled, tanks from second echelons and reserves are added to the composition of artillery groups.

To support battalions of the first echelon, artillery subunits are detailed from the artillery attached to the regiment.

Missile subunits are disposed in defense so as to be able to deliver strikes against the enemy in his concentration areas, when he is moving up and deploying for an

offensive, and also so that fire can be switched both along the front as well as into the depth.

With the aim of being in constant readiness to destroy the enemy's nuclear attack weapons and other important objectives, a duty missile battery is detailed.

Artillery disposed in concealed firing positions on axes vulnerable to tanks must be ready to destroy the enemy's tanks which have broken through, by direct-laying fire from the positions already occupied and by moving to prepared positions.

To move missile subunits and artillery, alternate siting areas (firing positions) and movement routes to them are prepared in advance. If necessary, siting areas and firing positions are protected by antitank obstacles.

With the aim of confusing the enemy about the grouping of the artillery and the system of artillery fire, use is made of roving guns (combat vehicles) and batteries.

Tanks brought in to fire from concealed firing positions are disposed by companies.

487. In defense, aircraft are employed on instructions from the senior commander. Their tasks are the following:

— destruction of the enemy in his concentration areas, when he is moving up to the forward edge of the defense, and when he is deploying for the offensive;

— participation in counterpreparation;

— support of the defending troops by destroying the enemy's nuclear attack weapons, his groupings which have driven a wedge into the defense, his reserves, control points, and radiotechnical means;

— support of counterattacks and counterstrikes by their own troops;

— cover troops against strikes from the enemy in the air;

— destruction of the enemy's airborne, and, on coastal axes, also of his seaborne, landings;

— conduct air and radiation reconnaissance.

488. With the aim of disrupting the enemy's attack, counterpreparation is planned and carried out against the enemy's main grouping in its concentration areas, when it is moving up to the forward edge of the defense, and when it is deploying for the offensive.

Counterpreparation is accomplished by powerful strikes by missile troops, aircraft, artillery, and tanks, use being made of nuclear and chemical ammunition.

For counterpreparation, missile subunits and all the divisional artillery located in the sectors and on the axes on which counterpreparation is being conducted are brought in, and also part of the artillery from adjacent sectors, as well as tanks detailed to fire from concealed firing positions. In addition, on instructions from the senior commander, units of operational-tactical missiles, divisional artillery from second echelons of the army (corps), and aircraft may be brought in to participate in the counterpreparation. In all cases, fire weapons brought in for counterpreparation must be dispersed.

In some cases, following the counterpreparation, and in accordance with the plan of the senior commander, a strike may be delivered in front of the forward edge of the defense with the aim of completing the rout of the enemy troops in the first echelon.

All preparatory measures for conducting counterpreparation must be carried out in the greatest secrecy.

489. The protection of troops against weapons of mass destruction is achieved by making use of the protective features of the terrain, by constructing shelters for troops and control points quickly, by fitting them out in special ways; by changing the disposition areas of second echelons and reserves periodically; by detecting areas contaminated by radioactive and toxic substances in good time, by moving subunits out of areas with a high level of radiation, by evacuating affected personnel quickly from areas of nuclear bursts and giving them the necessary help.

The chemical defense company is disposed behind the division's first echelon in readiness to provide full special treatment for troops who have been subjected to nuclear and chemical strikes.

490. Antiair defense is planned throughout the whole depth of the division's defense. The most thorough cover is provided for troops defending important areas of ground, and also for second echelons and reserves.

The grouping of antiaircraft weapons must conform to the tasks being carried out by the troops being covered, and it must ensure the timely repulse of strikes by the air enemy from any direction. It is set up with a view to destroying the air enemy in the approaches to the troops being covered, to moving the antiaircraft weapons quickly to deployment lines for counterattacks, and also with a view to combating the enemy's airborne forces while they are airborne and when they are being dropped.

Antiaircraft subunits of regiments operate in their combat formations, providing cover first of all for tanks and artillery. Some of the antiaircraft self-propelled guns may be deployed within the bounds of the forward position.

491. The task of combating the enemy's airborne troops which have landed within the bounds of the positions in the division's defense is given to the troops defending these positions. To combat airborne forces, part of the forces of the second echelon, reserves, artillery units and subunits, and aircraft are also brought in. The enemy's airborne forces are annihilated immediately.

Divisional headquarters determines the areas of possible enemy airborne landings, organizes a watch for them, and works out measures to destroy them if they are landed.

492. The division's (regiment's) control points are disposed in areas which are difficult of access to tanks on one of the positions in the depth of the defense, with a view to convenient troop control.

From the composition of the command posts, observation posts are assigned and are set up on the main axis and on the axes of counterattacks.

The division's alternate command post is set up in an area which ensures reliable troop control if the command post is put out of action.

The rear control point is located in the disposition area of rear units (subunits).

Until the enemy starts the offensive, troop control is conducted mainly over line and mobile means of communications. Radio and radio-relay communications must be organized and prepared to start operating and be in constant readiness to ensure troop control. Such communications can be used during this period to communicate with reconnaissance troops, to direct the fire of antiaircraft subunits, and also to transmit notification signals.

493. In defense, with the aim of deceiving the enemy and reducing the effectiveness of his nuclear strikes, the disposition areas of reserves, missile subunits, artillery, antiaircraft subunits, and control points are changed periodically, and use is also made of smoke screens.

A change in the disposition areas must be carried out secretly, as a rule, under cover of darkness or under conditions of bad visibility, with the strictest observance of concealment, in conformity with the proposed combat plan and with the permission of the senior commander.

494. In subunits and at firing positions, additional stocks of materiel are set up.

Rear units (subunits) are disposed in dispersed order, in shelters, and in areas difficult of access for tanks.

2. The Motorized Rifle Division (Regiment) in Defense

495. The division (regiment) goes over to the defense under conditions when troops are in direct contact with the enemy or when there is no contact with him.

When going over to the defense under enemy pressure, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer takes steps first of all to consolidate favorable lines, to organize a system of fire, above all of antitank fire, to secure the flanks and gaps, to protect the troops against weapons of mass destruction, and, when the enemy is conducting vigorous operations on separate axes, to inflict defeat on him by artillery fire and counterattacks by tanks, compelling him to go over to the defense.

In all cases, it is essential to give the troops as much time as possible to organize defense.

496. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer makes his decision and sets tasks usually on a map, and then makes them more precise through reconnoitering.

The basis for the divisional (regimental) commanding officer's decision concerning the defense lies in determining the areas of ground which must be held to ensure steadiness of the defense, and the areas in which it is proposed to inflict a defeat on the enemy by nuclear and chemical weapons; it also lies in determining the grouping of forces and weapons and the layout of the defense, taking into account the nature of the terrain and the requirements for maneuver. The decision made must provide for the best use of fire weapons, and above all of nuclear and antitank weapons, taking into account the features of the terrain, for the reliable protection of units and subunits against weapons of mass destruction, and also for the launching of decisive counterattacks and for maneuver during combat.

497. Reconnoitering is conducted with the aim of clarifying on the ground the following:

— the most probable axis on which the enemy's main forces, especially his tanks, will attack, his deployment lines or his departure areas for the offensive;

— the areas on the approaches to the forward edge, in which it is proposed to inflict defeat on the enemy with nuclear and chemical weapons, artillery fire, tank fire, and air strikes;

— the demarcation of the forward position, of the forward edge, and of positions and defense sectors (areas); the areas for the disposition of reserves, and alternate and dummy areas and positions (in addition, the regimental commanding officer clarifies the company strong points);

— the system of fire and the tasks for fire weapons, the main and alternate positions of launchers, the areas for the firing positions of artillery, tanks, antitank guided missiles, and antiaircraft weapons, and the firing lines of tank subunits and the antitank reserve;

— the axes for counterattacks and for maneuver by the second echelons and the reserves, the deployment lines on each axis, and the routes for moving to them;

— the nature of and the procedure for engineer preparation of the defense zone (sector), the preparation of routes for moving and maneuvering troops, the lines for mobile mine-laying (podvizhnoye minirovaniye), and also the procedure for using engineer vehicles and means of mechanization;

— the measures for securing gaps and flanks;

— the measures for supporting the operations of troops at night and under other conditions of limited visibility;

— the places for control points.

If aircraft have been assigned to support the division in combat, the divisional commanding officer clarifies their tasks and the objectives against which strikes are to be delivered.

498. In his combat order, the divisional commanding officer gives information about the enemy, the division's task, his plan, the demarcation of the forward edge of the defense and of positions, and the tasks of adjacent troops, and he lays down the following:

— for regiments of the first echelon - the reinforcement weapons, the tasks, the defense sectors, on what axes and in what areas the main efforts are to be concentrated, and also the demarcation lines;

— for regiments of the second echelon - the reinforcement weapons, the tasks, the defense sectors, the axes and deployment lines for counterattacks, the firing lines of tank subunits and the routes for moving to them, and the tasks for closing breaches which have been caused by enemy nuclear strikes;

— for missile subunits - the siting areas, the tasks, the time at which they are to be ready to launch missiles, and the duty battery;

— for artillery - the tasks, the composition of artillery groups, the procedure for bringing in tanks to fire from concealed firing positions, the time at which artillery is to be ready to open fire, and the procedure for bringing it in for counterpreparation;

— for antiaircraft subunits - the procedure for covering troops and objectives and the time at which they are to be ready;

— for reserves and for the mobile obstacle detachment - the tasks, the composition, the disposition areas, the firing lines (lines for mobile mine-laying) and the routes leading out to them;

— the tasks for securing gaps and flanks;

— the times at which the defensive positions are to be occupied and when the system of fire is to be ready;

— the places for control points and the time when they are to be deployed.

When a forward position is created, its forward edge, the forces and weapons assigned for its defense, and the nature of its engineer preparation are laid down in the order.

499. In his combat order, the regimental commanding officer gives information about the enemy, the regiment's task, his plan, the demarcation of the forward position, of the forward edge of the defense and of positions, and the tasks of adjacent troops, and he lays down the following:

— for battalions in the first echelon — the attached and supporting subunits, the tasks, the defense areas, the company strong points, the procedure for securing gaps and flanks, the demarcation lines between battalions; and, for the battalion (battalions) of the second echelon or for the combined-arms reserve, in addition — the axes and deployment lines for counterattacks and the routes for moving to them;

— for the tank battalion of the motorized rifle regiment — the procedure for employing tanks, the tasks, the company strong points, the firing lines to repel the attacks of enemy tanks, and the axes and deployment lines for counterattacks;

— for artillery and mortar subunits — the sectors for concentrated fire and for standing barrage fire, the tasks in providing covering fire gaps, flanks, and breaches caused by enemy nuclear strikes, the tasks in supporting counterattacks, and the time at which subunits are to be ready to open fire;

— for the antitank reserve and for the mobile obstacle detachment — the composition, the tasks, the disposition areas, the firing lines to repel the attacks of enemy tanks (the lines for mobile mine laying), and the routes leading to them;

— for the antiaircraft subunit — the tasks for engaging low-flying targets and the firing positions;

— the times at which the defensive positions are to be occupied, and when the system of fire is to be ready;

— the places for control points and the time when they are to be deployed.

500. Collaboration is planned on the ground throughout the whole depth of the enemy's probable axes of the offensive, on the axes on which one's own troops are to counterattack, and is achieved by coordinating the efforts of the following:

— missile subunits, artillery, and tanks, brought in to fire from concealed firing positions, with aircraft strikes against [one line missing], when moving to the forward edge of the defense and deploying, when fighting in the security zone (if one is created), and in the departure position for the offensive;

— subunits defending the forward position, the artillery supporting them, and also of aircraft;

— units (subunits) of the first echelon, and of fire weapons and aircraft when repelling enemy attacks in front of the forward edge of the defense;

— troops in the first and second echelons, of the reserves, and of fire weapons and aircraft when destroying the enemy who has driven a wedge into the defense, and in conducting counterattacks;

— antiaircraft units (subunits) and fighter aircraft in covering troops against strikes by the aerial enemy;

When planning collaboration, special attention is paid to coordinating efforts in switching fire and maneuvering

forces and weapons, with the aim of maximum exploitation of the results of one's own nuclear strikes, in timely reinforcement of the defense on threatened axes, in the launching of decisive counterattacks, and the elimination of the consequences of the enemy's employment of weapons of mass destruction.

Divisional (regimental) headquarters tie in the questions of cooperation between subunits of different arms of troops and special troops, adjacent forces, and aircraft.

501. The divisional commanding officer organizes a system of fire for missile subunits, divisional artillery, tanks brought in to fire from concealed firing positions, and for the division's antitank reserve, tanking into account the nuclear and aircraft strikes which are to be delivered in accordance with the plan of the army commander (corps commanding officer).

The regimental commanding officer organizes a system of fire for organic and attached artillery, mortar, and tank subunits, starting at the maximum range of fire. He is the main planner of antitank fire on the regiment's defense sector.

502. For defense at night, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer makes provision for the following:

- the procedure for going over from day operations to night operations and the essential changes in the disposition of troops and the system of fire;
- the reinforcing of reconnaissance and protection troops and of observation of the enemy with the employment of night vision equipment, as well as of the defense of flanks and gaps;
- the procedure for illuminating the terrain and measures to combat the enemy's means of illumination and night vision equipment;
- measures for ensuring the safety of one's own troops from the light radiation of a nuclear burst;
- ensuring orientation, recognition, and target indication;
- the measures for troops to go from night to day operations;

— the recognition signs of one's own subunits and the signals for target indication.

In counteratcking at night, special attention is paid to ensuring the arrival of the counterattacking troops in the deployment lines, to the timely preparation of artillery fire andcof air strikes, and to illuminating the enemy. The plan for a counterattack at night must be a simple one, and the counterattack must be carried out quickly and suddenly.

503. The work of engineer preparation of a defense zone (sector) is usually done simultaneously throughout the whole depth in succession, thus ensuring that the troops are in constant readiness to repel the enemy's offensive and are protected against weapons of mass destruction. The work is carried out by the troops themselves and by subunits of engineer troops secretly, taking into account that the positions may be under enemy observation, with the maximum effort and with the greatest use of means of mechanization, local building materials, and prefabricated engineer structures and constructions. On the first position, engineer work is usually done at night and in poor visibility.

On going over to the defense, subunits at the same time as organizing the system of fire start to dig trenches and to equip positions for fire weapons, to arrange the simplest shelters for personnel, and also to prepare routes for maneuvering.

Simultaneously with this, subunits of engineer troops begin to set up antitank minefields in front of the forward edge, in the gaps, and on the flanks, make preparations to set them up on the main axes in the depth of the defense, and they also start to arrange structures for control points and medical posts.

Subsequently, trenches and communication trenches are dug, the equipping of firing positions for antitank weapons, missile subunits, and artillery is improved, firing lines, blindages, and shelters for personnel are equipped, as well as shelters for equipment and supplies of materiel, the network of routes is extended, alternate and dummy areas and positions are equipped, and water supply points are arranged.

The work of engineer preparation of a defense zone (sector) is planned, organized, and directed by the divisional (regimental) engineer on the basis of the decision made by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer.

All engineer work and measures to organize the defense are conducted with the observance of camouflage measures.

504. As soon as the enemy starts fire preparation, missile subunits, artillery, and tanks, firing from concealed firing positions, in collaboration with aircraft, destroy the enemy's nuclear weapons of attack and his artillery, as well as his tanks and infantry moving up or preparing to go into the attack. Antiaircraft subunits, in collaboration with fighter aircraft, destroy the aerial enemy, preventing him from delivering strikes against the defending troops and against other objectives.

The personnel of motorized rifle subunits remain in prepared shelters and under other cover in readiness to take their places immediately to repel the enemy's attacks. Those assigned as observers remain in their places throughout the whole of the division's defense zone and conduct observation with the help of periscopes. During the enemy's fire preparation, commanding officers personally maintain observation of the enemy's operations and of the dispositions of their own troops from previously prepared shelters, with the help of periscopes and other technical means.

Reserves and mobile obstacle detachments are moved into areas which have been subjected to enemy nuclear strikes, with the aim of closing breaches in the combat formations of troops.

If enemy airborne forces are landed, and if sabotage and reconnaissance groups (detachments) penetrate into the depth of the defense, they are to be wiped out immediately.

505. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer and headquarters must establish in good time the enemy's preparations for an offensive, his grouping, especially of his tanks, and where his nuclear attack weapons, control points, and radiotechnical means are disposed.

Having established that the enemy's main forces are moving from the depth and deploying for the offensive, the divisional commanding officer reports this to the army commander (corps commanding officer), clarifies their tasks to missile subunits, artillery, and tanks participating in the counterpreparation, and gives the order (signal) to open fire.

The enemy's main grouping of troops is destroyed by nuclear and chemical strikes and by fire from artillery and tanks, starting at the maximum ranges.

The aircraft participating in the counterpreparation destroy objectives which are not being attacked by nuclear weapons and artillery, delivering strikes in the first place against the enemy's nuclear attack weapons, his artillery, tanks, and infantry, which are ready to attack, and also against his control points.

When part of the division's forces are delivering a strike in front of the forward edge of the defense, the divisional commanding officer, if necessary, clarifies their tasks to units and subunits participating in this strike, and also the procedure for their collaboration with missile subunits, artillery, aircraft, and units of the first echelon.

506. While the enemy's reconnaissance in force and the attacks of his leading subunits are being repulsed, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer supports the subunits defending the forward position by fire from artillery and tanks detailed for this, as well as by fire from other weapons, with the aim of breaking up the enemy's attenmpts to reconnoiter the forward edge or to break into it from the march.

To confuse the enemy, subunits and fire weapons which have disclosed their locations must change their positions. Paths made by the enemy through our obstacles are closed immediately.

507. As soon as the enemy goes into the attack, the fire of the defenders is brought up to the maximum intensity. The main mass of fire is concentrated on the destruction of the enemy's tanks and infantry.

The artillery inflicts attacks on the enemy's tanks by a creeping barrage and, disrupting the enemy's combat formations, creates favorable conditions for their subsequent destruction by fire from antitank weapons. On the most important sectors in front of the forward edge of the defense, the artillery lays down a standing barrage.

Antitank weapons and tanks usually open fire at ranges at which the enemy's tanks and armored personnel carriers can be effectively attacked. Rifle subunits, together with tanks and artillery, destroy the enemy's tanks and armored personnel carriers, cut the infantry off from the tanks, and then annihilate the infantry with fire. Enemy tanks which have broken through are destroyed by all antitank weapons disposed in the depth.

Defending units (subunits) attack the most threatening enemy groupings with surprise concentrated fire from all weapons, inflict losses on them, and do their utmost to stop the enemy's advance.

Nuclear and chemical strikes are delivered against the enemy's second echelons and reserves, and in some cases also against his troops in the first echelon on the decisive axes.

Aircraft destroy the enemy's newly detected nuclear attack weapons and deliver strikes against his second echelons and reserves, his artillery, and his control points.

When repelling assaults at night, artillery and aircraft, in addition, illuminate the terrain, using star shells (bombs), and cause fires to break out in the enemy's dispositions.

508. When the enemy drives a wedge into the defense, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer takes steps to stop the enemy's further advance into the depth and toward the flanks, to split up the combat formations of the attacking enemy, and to inflict the maximum losses on him by massed fire from all types of weapons, including weapons in sectors which are not being attacked, and air strikes.

To strengthen the defense on decisive axes, reserves and mobile obstacle detachments are brought in, and forces and weapons are thrown in from sectors which are not being attacked.

Subunits which find themselves in the enemy's rear continue to hold the positions they have occupied. When circumstances are favorable, they conduct counterattacks on the enemy's flank and rear. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer must support their operations with the forces and weapons at his disposal.

509. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer, while delivering fire strikes against the enemy who has driven a wedge into the defense, at the same time must mount a counter-attack with forces drawn from the second echelon and the reserves.

Counterattacks are conducted swiftly and, as a rule, from the march against the flanks and rear of the enemy who has broken through, usually at the moment when the advance of the attacking units has, as a result of losses suffered by them, lost its impetus or been stopped, while the enemy's

nearest reserves approaching from the depth have been halted or have suffered considerable losses from nuclear and chemical strikes, from the fire of the defending troops, and from air strikes. The main element of the counter-attacking troops consists of tanks.

Before a counterattack is launched, all fire weapons bombard the enemy, aircraft deliver strikes, and his reserves are cut off. Nuclear and chemical strikes are delivered against the enemy who has broken through in such a way that one's own troops should not be hit or be hampered in maneuvering by the contamination of the terrain.

If the enemy drives a wedge into the defense at the point where the division's (regiment's) troops link up with adjacent troops, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer is obliged to inflict losses on the enemy by fire from all weapons, to take steps to prevent the enemy from spreading in the direction of the flank and into the depth, and, when circumstances are favorable, to destroy him by a counterattack made by the division's (regiment's) second echelon in collaboration with adjacent troops.

Successful development of the counterattack must be supported by all the forces and weapons at the disposal of the divisional commanding officer.

After the counterattack has been carried out and the position restored, all commanding officers and headquarters, without waiting for orders, take steps for the rapid restoration of the broken system of fire, especially antitank fire, of collaboration, of the reserves, second echelons, and of obstacles.

510. When the enemy uses nuclear weapons on a massed scale and when he builds up a clear superiority of forces and weapons, especially of tanks, counterattacks may not be carried out. In such a case, the division (regiment) defends the prepared positions stubbornly, inflicts losses on the enemy by bringing the fire of all types of weapons to bear on him and by using obstacles [one line missing] and prepares conditions to launch a counterstrike. Subunits and units, fighting on the flanks of the enemy grouping which has broken through, hold switch positions, and prevent the breakthrough from being extended in the direction of the flanks, thereby securing deployment lines for a counterstrike (counterattack) by forces from the second echelon of the army (corps).

511. The commanding officer of the division (regiment) in the second echelon must always know the situation on the probable axes of impending operations, must watch for changes in it and be in constant communication with army headquarters (divisional commanding officer), as well as with the commanding officers of divisions (regiments) in the first echelon and with the army (divisional) reserves. To obtain reliable information about the enemy and about the state of one's own troops, divisional (regimental) headquarters send officers forward to the units of the first echelon engaged in combat.

Having received an order to launch a counterstrike (counterattack), the divisional (regimental) commanding officer informs his subordinate commanding officers about the axes on which the enemy is operating and the lines which he has reached, about the state of units of the first echelon, and the procedure in which the army will use nuclear and chemical weapons, and he gives the order for the counterstrike (counterattack). The division's (regiment's) march to the area of combat operations is organized taking into account a probable encounter with the enemy who has broken through. As a rule, the tasks for fire weapons in supporting the counterattack, antiaircraft weapons, the procedure for deploying troops, and for collaboration are determined at the same time as the march is organized, and are made more precise while the division (regiment) is moving to the deployment lines. Rapid and thorough planning of the counterattack, especially of the neutralization of the enemy by fire, and the secret moving up of troops, are of decisive significance in ensuring its success.

For a counterstrike (counterattack), the combat formation of the division (regiment) usually consists of one echelon, together with the assigning of strong reserves. As a rule, the tank regiment of the motorized rifle division and tank battalions of motorized rifle regiments are employed in the first echelon on the axis of the main strike.

The division (regiment) carries out the counterstrike (counterattack) by the methods used for meeting engagements.

512. In winter, the division's (regiment's) defense is organized on general lines. In the first place, attention is paid to defending road junctions and inhabited localities.

The forward edge of the defense and positions are selected if possible behind obstructions which are difficult to surmount in winter (ravines, water obstacles with steep banks).

All shelters in front of the forward edge which could be used by the enemy are destroyed or mined, and must be under fire from artillery, tanks, and other fire weapons.

Some of the subunits and fire weapons are prepared for maneuvering, for counterattacks, and for securing gaps and flanks on cross-country vehicles and skis.

Engineer support of the defense in winter, in addition to the general measures, consists of arranging places where personnel can warm themselves, of making trenches and communication trenches out of snow with coverings, of setting up additional obstacles on sectors of terrain and on axes which the enemy's tanks and infantry can cross, of creating dummy structures out of snow, as well as of clearing roads and cross-country routes and laying winter roads across virgin snow for one's own troops.

In the construction of all defensive structures and obstacles, the depth of the snow cover is taken into account. Steps are taken to ensure that mine field obstacles are in constant readiness for action, and measures are also taken to maintain winter camouflage.

513. Defense in a forest is based on a system of fire from company and platoon strong points prepared for all-around defense, in combination with counterattacks and with the use of obstacles. Bulges in the forest should be used to organize flanking fire and cross fire.

Ambushes are arranged and patrols are mounted in the gaps between company (platoon) strong points.

Special attention is paid to organizing cross fire and flanking fire on axes which are suitable for an offensive, and to holding the areas which intersect the enemy's most probable axes of attack.

Depending on the situation, the forward edge of the defense is selected in front of the edge of the forest or is withdrawn into the depth. In the latter case, combat outposts are pushed out to the edge of the forest.

Second echelons and reserves are also disposed in strong points fitted out for all-around defense which cover with their fire roads, forest clearings, and lanes.

The defense's system of fire in a forest is organized so that all obstacles, roads, and lanes can be reliably swept with fire and that intersections of roads and lanes come under cross fire.

Preparations are made for artillery and tanks firing from concealed firing positions to lay down fire on separate sectors of roads, on places where lanes intersect, and on roads in the near and distant approaches to the forward edge of the defense, and against the most important of these targets—preparations for nuclear strikes are made.

The special features of engineer support of a defense in a forest are: clearing of zones for observation and fire; arranging forest obstructions; preparing additional roads; carrying out measures to fight forest fires, and clearing routes of obstructions which have been caused by nuclear strikes.

The elements of surprise and speed in the carrying out of counterattacks by small forces become of great significance. To ensure secrecy of movement and the best way of finding one's bearings, the axes for the counterattack must be thoroughly studied, prepared, and clearly marked out on the ground.

A large part of the artillery is attached to regiments (battalions) of the first echelon and is employed mainly for direct-laying fire.

Tanks of motorized rifle regiments are employed to carry out counterattacks as component parts of second echelons (reserves) and to reinforce companies of the first echelon, and also for operations from ambushes.

3. The Tank Division (Regiment) in Defense

514. The tank (heavy tank) division can operate in defense both in the first as well as in the second echelon. It is able in a short space of time to set up a vigorous, firm defense, capable of withstanding massed enemy nuclear and air strikes and of repelling an offensive by his tank groupings successfully.

The tank division may go over to the defense as a component part of the first echelon of the army, as well as when it is cut off from the approach of the main forces. The special features in going over to the defense when cut off from the army are the following: the defense is organized in a very short time, hurriedly, when in direct contact with the enemy and under pressure from his superior forces, when the division (regiment) has open flanks.

515. Defense by a tank division (regiment) in the first echelon is based on the firm holding of important areas of ground, on powerful direct-laying fire from tanks and fire from tanks firing from concealed firing positions, on rapid maneuvering by units and subunits with the aim of building up pressure on threatened axes, and on strong counterattacks by second echelons (reserves).

516. The grouping of forces and weapons of the tank division in defense must provide for bombarding the enemy in the approaches to the forward edge, for the firm holding of positions that have been occupied, for the carrying out of decisive counterattacks, and for the maneuvering of troops from the depth and from sectors which are not being attacked, with the aim of building up pressure on the threatened axes and of quickly closing breaches which have been caused by enemy nuclear strikes. The division's first echelon may consist of two to three regiments, and the second echelon of one to two regiments.

Tank regiments (regiment) in the division's first echelon are allotted defense sectors and are usually reinforced by subunits of the motorized rifle regiment.

As a rule, the motorized rifle regiment is employed to reinforce with its subunits the tank regiments in the first echelon, and in some cases may, as part of the division's first echelon, defend an independent sector.

The tank regiment in the division's second echelon prepares one or two positions in the depth of the defense along the front of the whole division or is disposed in dispersed order in an assigned area in readiness to carry out counterattacks or to occupy a prepared defense sector.

The heavy tank regiment is usually employed in the second echelon to carry out counterattacks or to repel the attacks of enemy tanks from prepared positions.

517. The defense zone of the tank division includes several positions, siting areas of missile subunits, firing positions of tanks, artillery, and of other weapons, and a system of obstacles.

The basis of each position is formed by company strong points prepared for all-around defense, comprising platoon strong points. Motorized rifle subunits occupy positions in front of tank subunits, in the gaps between

them, and on their flanks. They are included in the strong points of companies and of platoons.

The gaps between company strong points are covered by flanking fire from tanks firing from strong points and by obstacles; in broken country tank ambushes and motorized rifle subunits may, in addition, be located in the gaps.

The forward position (if it is created) is defended by subunits of regiments in the first echelon.

In front of the defense zone, in its depth, as well as in the gaps and on the flanks of units and subunits, tank ambushes and observation are organized and patrols are mounted. The disposition of tank ambushes and their operations are coordinated with the operations of other units, subunits, and the artillery.

518. The basis of the system of fire of the tank division in defense is fire from tanks and artillery in combination with nuclear and chemical strikes, air strikes, and obstacles. [One line missing] flanking and cross fire and fire collaboration between them.

On the most probable axes of operations by tanks, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer makes preparations to switch and to concentrate the fire of artillery and tanks for the annihilation of the enemy in front of the forward edge and in the depth of the defense.

The divisional (regimental) commanding officer pays special attention to organizing the system of tank fire to cover the gaps and flanks, and to this end the fire and maneuvering of tank subunits are prepared in advance.

To confuse the enemy about the real system of fire and the disposition of forces and weapons, use is made of roving tanks, tank platoons, guns, and batteries, and dummy firing positions for tanks and artillery are prepared.

519. All tank subunits disposed outside the boundaries of the first position must be prepared to fire from concealed firing positions with the aim of bombarding the enemy, especially when he is moving to the forward edge, and when repelling his attacks.

On the basis of the decision made by the divisional commanding officer, the commander of the tank division's artillery is obliged to plan the fire of tank subunits brought

in to fire from concealed firing positions, to tie them in topographically, to fix the quantity of ammunition to be expended and the procedure [two words missing].

The commanding officer of the tank unit (subunit) is responsible for the timely planning of fire, for the occupation of concealed firing positions by the tanks, for the preparation of mounts for firing, and for the timely opening of fire.

520. When the tank division is in defense, the main efforts of antiaircraft weapons are concentrated on covering defense sectors on the main axis and missile subunits in the areas occupied by them, as well as on covering the movement of units and subunits when they are moving to deployment lines for counterattacks, and during the counterattack.

521. On receiving the task to go over to the defense, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer makes a decision on a map, which he makes more precise if there is time, on the ground, during reconnoitering.

After making a decision, the tank division's (regiment's) commanding officer issues a combat order, which is recorded in writing and registered by his staff, plans collaboration, and gives instructions about various forms of support.

522. In his combat order, the tank division's commanding officer gives information about the enemy, the division's task and his plan, the demarcation of the forward edge of the defense and of positions, and the tasks of adjacent troops, and he lays down the following:

— for regiments in the first echelon — the reinforcements in weapons and subunits, the tasks, the defense sectors, on which axes and in which areas the main efforts are to be made, and also the boundary lines;

— for regiments in the second echelon (reserves) — the tasks, the lines to be prepared for defense (disposition areas), the axes for counterattacks, the deployment lines, and the routes for moving to them;

— for missile subunits — the siting areas, the tasks, the time at which they are to be ready to launch missiles, the duty battery;

— for artillery — the tasks, the procedure for bringing in tanks to fire from concealed firing positions, the time at which the troops are to be ready to open fire, the procedure for being brought in to carry out counterpreparation;

— for antiaircraft units (subunits) — the procedure for covering troops and targets and the time at which they are to be ready;

— the tasks for securing gaps and flanks;

— the times at which the defense is to be occupied, and the time at which the system of fire is to be ready;

— the places for control points and the time at which they are to be deployed.

When a forward position is being set up, the order gives its forward edge, the forces and weapons assigned for its defense, and the nature of its engineer preparation.

523. When setting combat tasks, the tank regiment's commanding officer lays down in his combat order the following:

— for battalions in the first echelon — the attached and supporting subunits, the tasks, the defense area, the company strong points, the procedure for securing gaps and flanks, the boundary lines between battalions; and for the battalion in the second echelon (reserve), in addition, the axes, the deployment lines for the counterattack and the routes for moving to them, and the procedure for bringing in tanks to fire from concealed firing positions;

— for subunits of attached artillery and for tanks brought in to fire from concealed firing positions — the sectors in which concentrated fire and standing barrage fire are to be laid down, the tasks in supporting counterattacks, and the time at which they are to be ready to open fire;

— for the antiaircraft subunit — the tasks to combat low-flying targets and the firing positions;

— the times at which the defense is to be occupied and the time at which the system of fire is to be ready;

— the places for control points and the time at which they are to be deployed.

524. In planning collaboration, the tank division's (regiment's) commanding officer pays special attention to coordinating the efforts for destroying the enemy, especially his tanks, in the approaches to the forward edge, as well as to coordinating the operations of units (subunits) to support counterattacks and the maneuver of troops to the main axes vulnerable to tanks and to areas against which the enemy is most likely to deliver nuclear strikes.

525. On going over to the defense, units (subunits) begin to dig pits for tanks, artillery, and other fire weapons, and also arrange shelters for personnel. Subunits of engineer troops equip positions for missile subunits, set up antitank obstacles, taking into account the axes on which counterattacks are to be launched and troops are to maneuver, and they also equip shelters for control points and medical posts. On the axes on which counterattacks are to be made, mainly controlled mine fields are set up.

In addition the regiment (battalion) in the second echelon (reserve) prepares routes leading out to the deployment lines for counterattacks.

526. Having established that the enemy's main forces are moving from the depth and deploying for an offensive, the tank division's commanding officer reports this to the army commander (corps commanding officer) and, having obtained permission to carry out counterpreparation, gives the order (signal) to missile subunits, artillery, and tanks participating in the counterpreparation to open fire against the preallocated and newly detected targets.

In some cases, exploiting the results of successful counterpreparation, the divisional commanding officer, with the permission of the army commander, and in accordance with a previously prepared plan, may deliver a strike with part of his forces in front of the forward edge of the defense with the aim of routing the enemy units which have suffered most during the counterpreparation.

527. If a forward position has been set up, the subunits which are defending it repel the enemy's reconnaissance in force and the attack of his leading units (subunits). The divisional (regimental) commanding officer supports the operations of the subunits defending the forward position by fire from the artillery and tanks detailed for this purpose.

528. The divisional commanding officer is obliged to make use of all reconnaissance forces and means to establish in good time enemy preparations for an offensive. Before the enemy starts preparation fire, tank crews take their places in the combat vehicles, while the rest of the personnel take cover in prepared shelters in readiness to take up their places immediately to repel the enemy's attack.

During this period, observation of the enemy is increased throughout the division's whole zone, with the aim of timely detection of the moment when the enemy goes over to the attack.

529. As soon as the enemy moves into the attack, fire is increased to the greatest intensity. Tanks using direct-laying fire and firing from concealed firing positions, and artillery, by means of creeping barrage and concentrated fire, bombard the enemy's tanks and infantry. Motorized rifle subunits, making use of all weapons and in combination with tanks, artillery, and antitank grenade launchers, destroy the enemy's tanks and armored personnel carriers, cut off his infantry from the tanks by fire from machine guns and submachine guns, and destroy it.

The tank division's (regiment's) commanding officer concentrates the fire of all his weapons against the most threatening enemy grouping, striving to inflict the maximum losses on it and to stop its further advance, and if necessary moves forward tank and artillery subunits from sectors which are not being attacked and from the depth to the threatened axis.

530. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer must keep a continuous watch on the course of the combat, must always know the situation, and when making a decision, especially one to commit the second echelon (reserve), he must assess it thoroughly and comprehensively.

The regiment (battalion) in the second echelon moves up to the deployment line for counterattack on the order (signal) from the divisional (regimental) commanding officer, counterattacks the enemy from the march, and destroys him in collaboration with other units and subunits.

In those cases where it is inadvisable to carry out a counterattack, the regiment (battalion) in the second echelon, on orders from the divisional (regimental) commanding officer, repels the attack of the enemy's tanks by firing

from the positions it occupies, and also from prepared deployment lines on the most important axes. and then annihilates the enemy by a counterattack.

Attempts on the part of the enemy to reach the flank or the rear of the division (regiment) are repelled by fire, by counterattack, and also by transferring subunits from sectors which are not being attacked or from the second echelon of the reserve to the threatened axis.

531. When the tank division goes over to the defense at night, supplementary reconnaissance is organized, security detachments are strengthened, and important approaches to the forward edge of the defense are mined. Some of the tanks and other antitank weapons, together with rifle subunits, are moved up to the selected forward edge to cover units and subunits occupying the defensive positions. Officers are assigned to act as guides to lead units and subunits out to their allotted defense sectors (areas). At daybreak, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer clarifies on the ground the defense sectors (areas), the tasks of units (subunits), the system of fire, and organizes the creation of additional obstacles.

For successful defense at night, all fire weapons are prepared before nightfall for conducting fire with the help of night sights. Zones and sectors of fire are indicated by reference points which stand out in the darkness. A procedure for illuminating targets, which is brought to the notice of all personnel, is arranged.

As night falls, some of the fire weapons are moved up to temporary firing positions nearer the forward edge of the defense. Before daylight, these weapons are moved back secretly to their previous positions.

During the night, not less than half of the personnel of subunits defending the forward position and disposed in the first position must remain in constant readiness to repel surprise enemy attacks.

To carry out counterattacks at night, the axes for counterattacks and the routes for moving up second echelons (reserves) to deployment lines are reconnoitered before nightfall, paths through obstacles are marked out by signs which are noticeable in the dark, the procedure for collaboration between second echelons (reserves) and units (subunits) in the first echelon is clarified, artillery fire and aircraft

strikes are prepared, and measures for the illumination of the enemy when launching counterattacks are fixed.

532. The tank division operating in the second echelon is intended for delivering an army counterstrike (counterattack) or for the firm defense of important lines.

When the tank division is in defense in the second echelon, it is allotted a wider front than in the first echelon. It is given several axes for counterattacks. On each of the axes, main and alternate deployment lines are prepared which, if possible, should coincide with the switch positions and ensure the launching of counterattacks against the flank of the enemy grouping which has broken through.

The task of the tank division in a counterattack (counterstrike) consists of routing and destroying the enemy's grouping which has broken through, in collaboration with large units of the first echelon, and of restoring the situation.

The combat formation of the tank division when counterattacking consists of one or two echelons. As a rule, the tank regiments and the heavy tank regiment are allotted to the first echelon. In some cases, the motorized rifle regiment may operate in the first echelon. As a rule, the heavy tank regiment is employed on the axis of the main strike.

Before the counterattack is launched, fire strikes are delivered against the enemy grouping which has broken through.

On the axes of the counterattack, the necessary routes and cross-country routes are prepared. Pits for tanks and guns are dug on the deployment lines.

533. To support the commitment of the division to combat, a forward detachment or advance guard from regiments in the first echelon is sent forward to the deployment line.

A forward detachment is sent forward in those cases when the enemy might forestall our troops in seizing the deployment line, and also when moving up to a new, previously unforeseen axis for the counterattack.

Depending on the distance to the deployment line, the division (regiment) moves up in columns or in approach march formations. In all cases, the way in which the division forms up must make provision for an encounter with the enemy while it is still on the march to the deployment line.

Missile subunits and artillery move up together with tank units in order to be ready in time to support the counterattack.

The division's antiaircraft weapons move behind the advance guard (forward detachment) in readiness to deploy into combat formation and to cover the division's main forces on the deployment lines for the counterattack and during the counterattack. Antiaircraft subunits of regiments move at the heads of columns of their own regiments in readiness to open fire from the march and at short halts.

The repair and evacuation means and regimental medical posts move to the deployment lines for the counterattack.

534. On reaching the deployment position, the advance guards or the forward detachment occupy prepared positions or a natural favorable line and support the deployment of regiments of the first echelon into combat formation.

After an artillery bombardment, the regiments in the division's first echelon attack the enemy from the march, together with the subunits and units on the defensive there, and, supported by artillery fire, exploiting in so doing the results of nuclear strikes (if they have been delivered) and strikes by aircraft.

During the counterattack, the units of the division must conduct the offensive at a fast rate until the enemy who has driven in a wedge has been completely routed, and until the situation has been restored.

The division's second echelon may be committed to combat to increase the weight of the strike by the regiments of the first echelon and to complete the rout of the enemy who has driven in a wedge.

After completing the rout of the enemy who has driven in a wedge, the lines seized are immediately consolidated.

535. In those cases when the situation is such that it is inadvisable to launch a counterattack (counterstrike), the tank division in the second echelon, on orders from the army commander, firmly defends a position on the most threatened axis. In such a case, the divisional commanding officer is obliged to set new tasks to units or to clarify

them, and if necessary to organize the moving up of units for operations on a new line and to coordinate their operations with the artillery and aircraft.

536. When the tank division goes over to the defense in isolation from the main forces of the army, the divisional commanding officer pays special attention to reconnaissance and to securing the division's flanks and rear.

Under these conditions, it is advisable that the division's second echelon (reserve) should include a tank regiment (regiments) in readiness to move up and to deploy on the division's flanks.

4. Defense of Water Obstacles

537. A water obstacle is a natural obstruction, enabling one to organize a firm defense with small forces and on a wider front.

Defense of a water obstacle is usually organized on one's own bank. Depending on the width of the water obstacle and the nature of its valley, the forward edge of the defense is selected as near the water's edge as possible or is withdrawn into the depth to a favorable line, while on the bank a forward position is set up and obstacles are arranged. When there are bridgeheads which it is essential to hold, the defense of a water obstacle can be organized on both banks.

Second echelons and reserves are disposed in areas from which they can move up quickly and secretly to any sector where the enemy may cross and destroy him by a decisive counterattack. Depending on the width of the defense zone, the division's second echelon may be disposed in several areas on the most important axes.

Provision is made to assign the necessary forces and weapons for the annihilation of airborne forces.

538. The system of fire must provide for the destruction of the enemy in the approaches to the water obstacle, in sectors where the obstacle is to be forced, and on one's own bank, and also for the creation of pockets of fire. Special attention is paid to organizing flanking fire and cross fire, which will provide a reliable guarantee of hitting the enemy on the water, in combination with engineer obstacles.

Islands in the water obstacle and prominences on the shore are occupied by subunits specially assigned for this purpose, with the aim of preventing surprise forcing of the obstacle by the enemy, and also to conduct flanking fire along it.

In sectors where there are suitable crossings for the enemy's self-propelled ferrying equipment and tanks, especially along the bottom and submerged, the density of antitank fire is increased and various engineer obstacles, as well as tank traps, are arranged.

539. For the timely detection of enemy preparations and of enemy forcing of the water obstacle, reconnaissance is organized with the task of establishing the following: the moving up of the enemy's main forces to the water obstacle, their strength, composition, and the axis of their movement; the areas in which ferrying equipment is concentrated and the axis of its movement; the places where nuclear weapons are disposed and the firing positions of artillery; the sectors where crossings are being prepared, the areas and time at which troops embark in ferrying equipment, and the axis of their movement.

The carrying out of these tasks in the division is undertaken by deep reconnaissance groups, by reconnaissance groups operating in the approaches to the water obstacle, and by aerial and radio reconnaissance. In addition, continuous observation is organized in units and subunits, especially in sectors which are most accessible for forcing the obstacle.

540. In defending a water obstacle, nuclear and chemical weapons are employed against the enemy's main grouping in the approaches to the water obstacle, against his nuclear attack weapons, the areas in which ferrying equipment is concentrated, the most important crossings, his control points, and against the troops which are crossing.

Artillery and tanks brought in to fire from concealed firing positions prepare to lay down fire on the possible concentration areas of the enemy's main forces and of his ferrying equipment, as well as on the sectors where the enemy is likely to cross and on the approaches to them.

Some of the antitank guided missiles, tanks, and other fire weapons are moved up closer to the bank to destroy by direct-laying fire the enemy who is attempting to force the water obstacle.

541. Aircraft detect the moving up of the enemy to the water obstacle and his preparations to force it; they deliver strikes against the enemy's nuclear attack weapons and his main grouping, preventing the enemy from approaching and forcing the water obstacle; they destroy the ships of the enemy's river flotilla and his ferrying equipment and also cover their own troops.

542. The main efforts of antiaircraft weapons are concentrated on covering the units defending the sectors which are most suitable for crossings, and also on covering second echelons (reserves).

The grouping of antiaircraft weapons must make provision for switching the zone of fire to the approaches to the water obstacle, taking into account the need to preserve the antiaircraft weapons intact during the enemy's fire preparation.

Subunits which are defending islands are reinforced by antiaircraft subunits to destroy targets at low altitudes.

543. The special features of engineer support for the defense of a water obstacle lie in strengthening it by scarping the banks, by mining the approaches, fords, and sectors suitable for forcing, by mining the river itself, by setting up barrage fire by controlled mines on the surface of the water and in places where the enemy is likely to make landings, and by maintaining crossings and removing them quickly if the enemy threatens to seize them.

Local crossing means are concentrated on one's own bank, and if necessary are destroyed. Hydrotechnical structures which can be used to flood the terrain are placed under guard and preparations are made to demolish them, and when it is impossible to make use of them, and if the enemy threatens to seize them, they are demolished in accordance with a previously fixed procedure.

Crossings which are in use are removed or destroyed on orders from the divisional commanding officer; the approaches to them are mined and are covered by fire.

544. With the aim of stopping the enemy's approach and preventing the forcing of the water obstacle by him from the march, strikes are delivered against his main forces by aircraft and by artillery fire at maximum ranges. As soon as the forcing starts, the enemy is destroyed by fire of all kinds.

If the enemy crosses the water obstacle, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer is obliged, by using all kinds of fire, to prevent the crossing of the enemy's following echelons and reserves and, by launching decisive counterattacks, to destroy the enemy units which have crossed. Counterattacks must be made before the enemy manages to consolidate his hold on the bank which is being defended, and must be continued until he has been completely destroyed.

If the enemy transfers his efforts to other axes (sectors), the divisional (regimental) commanding officer takes decisive steps to switch his fire and to move his forces and weapons quickly to these axes (sectors).

5. Defense of a Large Town

545. A town with firm stone buildings and an extensive network of underground structures can be quickly turned into a strong center of defense.

In organizing the defense of a large town, it is essential to bear in mind the possibility that, as a result of nuclear strikes, large ruins may be caused, streets may be blocked, a high level of radioactive contamination may ensue, and fires may break out.

546. It is usually planned to defend a large town in the approaches to it. If necessary, troops may set up a defense in the town. In so doing, a large part of the division's (regiment's) forces is disposed in several places in the outskirts of and outside the town with the aim of preventing the enemy from by-passing and enveloping the town, while in the town itself company and platoon strong points are set up on the probable axes of the enemy's operations.

The tank regiment of the motorized rifle division is usually located outside the town and is employed for counterattacking the enemy troops by-passing the town, while the tank battalion of the motorized rifle regiment operates, as a rule, by platoons from ambushes or with single vehicles in the composition of subunits defending strong points.

It is advantageous for the forward edge of the division's defense zone to be in front of the town.

In defending a town, the division is given a defense zone in which the town itself is included. A regiment is allotted a defense sector.

To set up strong points, use is made of specially solid corner buildings with semibasements and basements in order to bring streets and squares under fire.

Each strong point must be fitted out for all-around defense, and there must be coordination of fire with adjacent strong points. Supplies of ammunition, foodstuffs, medical equipment, and drinking water are set up in strong points.

In the gaps between strong points, as well as in the streets of the town, obstacles are set up, the approaches to which must be brought under flanking and cross fire and must be mined.

547. In defending a town, the system of fire is based on a combination of flanking fire and cross fire from small arms, of guns mounted for direct-laying fire, of tanks and antitank guided missiles, as well as from mortars and artillery disposed in concealed firing positions.

Antitank reserves are disposed near street intersections in readiness to move along the streets, along side streets, through gardens and courtyards.

Antiaircraft subunits are employed taking into account the destruction of the air enemy in the approaches to the town.

548. The special features of engineer support in the defense of a town are the following: the fitting out of separate buildings, of parts of the town, and of the town as a whole for defense, taking into account the necessity of providing protection against weapons of mass destruction; setting up obstacles in the approaches to the town and in the town itself.

For the movement of troops, paths and passageways for men and vehicles are arranged within parts of the town, and underground structures are fitted out. Underground structures which are not used are blocked off, while exits from them are covered by fire. The basements of stone buildings are equipped as shelters.

549. Fighting in a town usually breaks up into a number of separate local battles to hold strong points. The subunits defending strong points must defend each building stubbornly, even when they are surrounded.

Enemy units (subunits) which are striving to bypass the town are destroyed by fire from weapons of all kinds, by aircraft strikes, and by counterattacks launched by second echelons and reserves. Counterattacks with small forces may be carried out with the aim of recapturing strong points seized by the enemy.

6. Defense of a Seacoast.

550. The defense of a seacoast is undertaken with the aim of preventing the landing of enemy seaborne and airborne forces on the coast. If the enemy does land, the defending troops must wipe him out on the shore or throw him into the sea.

On a seacoast, the division carries out a defense independently or in collaboration with large units of the navy.

The width of the division's defensive front may be as much as 40 km and more and may include several sectors suitable for landings. The regiment may defend a front of up to 15 km.

Large units of the navy detailed on instructions of the senior commander [illegible] are employed, as a rule, to support the division and to destroy the enemy's airborne forces. Units of coastal missile-artillery troops of the navy are brought in to support the defending troops on the most threatened axes. In some cases, artillery units of coastal missile-artillery troops located in the division's defense zone are placed under the direct command of the divisional commanding officer.

551. The areas most firmly held are those where there are fleet bases, ports, and stretches of coast suitable for the landing of enemy forces. With this aim, on the axes of approach to these places, positions and separate strong points are prepared, also lines or defense sectors for reserves, axes and deployment lines for counterattacks, and routes for movement. On stretches of the seacoast with difficult access, security detachments and reconnaissance are organized, and separate strong points are prepared.

The forward edge of the defense is selected as near as possible to the water's edge, while on a low-lying coast it may be withdrawn into the depth to an advantageous line. If the coast is high, then in places suitable for the landing of enemy forces, tunnels (caves) may be constructed in which antitank weapons, tanks, and machine guns are placed.

The system of fire is organized with a view to attacking the enemy both on the water as well as on the shore with flanking fire and cross fire.

Until the enemy has revealed his intentions, positions prepared directly on the coast may be occupied by part of the forces. In this case, the division's (regiment's) main forces are disposed in dispersed order in the depth in readiness to occupy these positions and to wipe out the enemy's airborne forces. On unoccupied stretches, patrols are mounted and observation is organized.

The division's (regiment's) combined-arms reserve is disposed in several places near roads. The distance of the reserve from the coast must ensure that it is disposed in a concealed way, that it can maneuver on any axis and can launch a timely counterattack before the enemy who has landed has consolidated his hold on the shore.

Artillery and tanks assigned for direct-laying fire, and antitank guided missiles, must be ready to move to the shore to previously prepared positions to destroy the enemy's landing-debarkation means and amphibious tanks when they are approaching the shore.

In areas suitable for the landing of enemy airborne forces, permanent observation is set up and preparations are made to move subunits to these areas and to lay down fire.

552. The division's missile subunits and artillery, in collaboration with coastal missile-artillery troops and warships of the navy, are employed to bombard the enemy's warships, his transports with seaborne forces, and his landing-debarkation means when they approach the shore, starting at the maximum ranges, and to annihilate the seaborne and airborne forces during the landing and during combat on the shore.

On stretches suitable for the landing of amphibious tanks, tank traps are arranged, and the system of antitank fire and obstacles is strengthened.

Some of the antiaircraft weapons are positioned directly on the coast in readiness to fire at the enemy in the air, and also at his warships and landing and assault craft.

553. In support of a division defending a seacoast, aircraft carry out reconnaissance, lay mine obstacles, destroy the enemy's airborne forces, warships, transports, and landing-debarkation means in the approaches to the shore, and also cover their own defending troops and the ships which are supporting them.

554. Warships of the navy carry out reconnaissance and observation on lines allotted to them, prevent the enemy from carrying out reconnaissance, destroy transports and landing-debarkation means with enemy troops, deliver strikes against his ships, lay mine obstacles on the most probable axes of movement and landing of forces, help the defending troops to destroy the airborne and seaborne forces which have landed, blockade seaborne forces from the sea in collaboration with aircraft, and also pursue the withdrawing enemy.

555. Reconnaissance by means of naval means and aircraft is organized for the purpose of determining the strength and composition of the enemy's forces, the direction in which they are moving, and the sectors where the presumed landing is to take place. Special attention is paid to detecting the enemy's warships armed with nuclear attack weapons.

In the division, observation is organized throughout the whole of the defense zone with extensive use of technical means of reconnaissance and radio reconnaissance.

556. In making a decision for the defense of a seacoast, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer must take into account the stretches of coast which are most suitable for the landing of forces, the system of observation, identification, and communications available on the coast, and the tasks of coastal missile-artillery units, warships, and aircraft within the limits of the zone (sector) to be defended. In this connection, the possibility is envisaged that the enemy may drop (land) airborne forces both in the depth of the defense as well as directly on the coast in the area of the seaborne landing force.

In organizing the defense of a seacoast, it is essential to make provision for measures to protect troops against radioactive contamination when underwater nuclear bursts occur and to take into account the special features of the movement of air contaminated by toxic substances in the coastal zone.

557. In organizing engineer support, besides the usual measures, provision is made for the following: the setting up of antilanding obstacles in sectors where the enemy landing is likely to be made; the construction of tunnels and caves in high coasts to house fire weapons and combat equipment and also to set up charges to be fired in fixed directions.

558. On the receipt of information that enemy landing forces are approaching, reconnaissance of all kinds is intensified, while subunits (units) and fire weapons nominated for operations on the threatened axes move up to occupy the prepared positions.

The enemy's sabotage and reconnaissance groups (detachments) are wiped out on the water or on the shore by specially detailed forces and weapons in such a way that the whole system of fire of the defense is not revealed prematurely.

The repulse of the landing of the main forces of the enemy's seaborne troops is accomplished by the joint efforts of combined-arms large units and units which are defending the coast, of aircraft, and of the navy. Bombardment of the enemy with the division's weapons starts as soon as his landing and assault craft and warships come within range of the fire of missile subunits and artillery.

When the enemy's seaborne forces approach the shore, the fire of all weapons is concentrated on the enemy's landing-debarkation means and his amphibious tanks.

Enemy airborne forces landed directly on the coast are wiped out by units in whose sectors they have landed.

The enemy landing may not be made on a continuous front, and the sectors and points for landing may be changed. Consequently, troops should not be withdrawn prematurely from adjacent defense sectors in order to strengthen the defense of sectors where troops have been landed.

Antiair defense troops and fighter aircraft must prevent enemy aircraft from doing artillery spotting for the guns of his warships.

When the enemy landing troops seize the shore, units and subunits of the first echelon must, by aggressive operations, prevent the enemy from moving forward into the depth, and from consolidating and joining up bases of operations. The enemy's units and subunits which have landed, and his following echelons, are destroyed by fire strikes from weapons of all kinds, by aircraft strikes, and by decisive counterattacks.

If the division (regiment) in the first echelon has failed to destroy the troops which have landed, it holds its positions stubbornly, prevents the enemy from moving forward into the depth and in the direction of the flanks, thereby

creating conditions for the subsequent destruction of the enemy by nuclear strikes and by counterstrikes (counter-attacks) by the army (division).

559. In defending a seacoast, troop control is exercised from control points set up in places from which observation can be kept on the sea and on the sectors of the coast where the enemy is most likely to land forces.

To ensure collaboration, communications with the naval base, with units (subunits) of coastal missile-artillery troops, and with warships of the fleet are, as a rule, established in the following ways: by radio — through officers who arrive with their own means of communication at the divisional (regimental) command post, or over the radio network of the fleet and of coastal missile-artillery units (subunits); by radio-relay and line — through the means of the ground forces, use being made of the existing lines and centers of communication on the seacoast.

560. In repelling the landing of an enemy seaborne force in an area where there are skerries, warships of the navy are employed mainly to destroy the troops when they are approaching the skerries. In an area where there are skerries, extensive use must be made of engineer obstacles.

To move forces and weapons quickly to threatened axes, use is made of helicopters and amphibious vehicles, and amphibious tanks are employed.

7. Defense in Mountainous Country

561. Defense in mountainous country is organized on axes which are accessible for an enemy offensive. The defense must be established most firmly on terrain accessible to tanks, and it must provide reliable cover for the approaches to mountain passes (crossings) and for the exits from them to ravines and to road junctions; it must also impede the enemy's deployment from columns and deprive him of freedom of maneuver.

Defense is based on the firm holding of separate, especially important stretches of ground by setting up a system of company and platoon strong points, with coordination of fire between them. In the gaps between strong points, reconnaissance is organized and patrols are mounted.

In defending mountainous country, especially where there are forests as well as mountains, it is of decisive importance to counter the enemy's outflanking and enveloping

movements, and also to combat his airborne forces and reconnaissance and sabotage groups. The defending troops must be ready to bring heavy fire to bear on the enemy from any direction and to destroy him by a counterattack.

562. The system of fire must provide for multitier flanking fire and cross fire, and must be laid out in such a way that there is no dead ground in front of the forward edge, on the flanks, and in the gaps between strong points. In so doing, fire weapons should be positioned both on slopes facing the enemy as well as on the reverse slopes of heights.

In organizing the defense of a narrow mountain valley, fire weapons should be positioned in such a way that the valley can be brought under cross fire throughout the whole depth of the defense. The approaches to commanding heights are covered by close defensive fire from artillery, mortars, and tanks assigned to fire from concealed firing positions.

In connection with the difficulty of maneuvering forces and weapons in mountainous country, the importance of switching fire becomes much greater.

Inhabited places and passes in the depth of the defense are prepared in good time for all-around defense. Preparations are made to cause landslides and to destroy roads and passes, as well as to set up obstacles in passes.

563. In defending mountainous country, it is advantageous to use nuclear and chemical weapons against enemy troops in narrow valleys, in gorges, and in passes, as well as against targets the destruction of which will cause landslides, obstructions, avalanches, and flooding, thereby impeding the maneuvering and the advance of the enemy's troops. With the aim of bombarding the enemy's troops as well as of destroying and contaminating narrow passes, ground nuclear bursts may be used on the axes of operations of the enemy troops.

564. In organizing antiair defense in mountainous country, it is essential to make provision for reliable cover of the following: units and subunits in areas of passes, mountain crossings, gorges, road junctions, and of crossings over mountain rivers; missile subunits and artillery on mountain plateaus; second echelons (reserves) during counterattacks and maneuvering.

Antiaircraft subunits are attached to units operating on separate axes.

565. The division's (regiment's) second echelons and reserves are disposed on the most important axes with a view to ensuring their movement and commitment to combat in good time on the planned lines, and also the repulse by them of possible enemy enveloping (outflanking) movements and the destruction of his airborne forces. Axes for counterattacks are thoroughly reconnoitered and prepared. For the transfer of reserves and subunits of the second echelon to threatened axes, extensive use is made of helicopters.

566. Tanks of motorized rifle regiments are employed for counterattacks along valleys and beds of shallow rivers, and also to strengthen the antitank defense of units (subunits) defending roads, defiles, the edges of large forests, and crossings over mountain rivers. The tank regiment of the motorized rifle division in defense in mountainous country is usually employed in the second echelon to carry out counterattacks or to defend important lines on axes vulnerable to tanks. It is usually disposed in several areas. Some of the tank subunits of the regiment are brought in to fire from concealed firing positions.

567. If the enemy breaks through into the depth of the defense, subunits stubbornly hold separate heights even when they are completely surrounded.

The division's (regiment's) second echelons and reserves, making use of concealed approaches for moving up, destroy the enemy who has burst into the defense by decisive counterattacks against his flanks and his rear. As a rule, counterattacks should be carried out from high ground downwards, along ridges, and along valleys.

8. Defense in Deserts

568. As a rule, defense in deserts is organized on the most probable axes of enemy operations.

For a defense in deserts, strong second echelons and reserves are created, which are disposed in much greater depth than under normal conditions.

The main efforts of the defending troops are concentrated on holding vitally important areas and objectives (lines). Secondary sectors and sectors with little access are defended by small forces and protected by obstacles. On stretches of ground difficult of access, observation is organized and patrols are mounted.

569. The division may defend one or two axes, operating in isolation from the other large units of the

army (corps). The regiment defends a defense sector intersecting one of the most important axes or adjacent to it. The battalion occupies a defensive position on a similar front to that under normal conditions, organizing the defense in the form of separate company strong points.

In the defense areas (strong points), supplies of ammunition, of antichemical defense means, [illegible] water, foodstuffs, and of fuel are accumulated.

570. Defense in deserts is based on a well-prepared system of fire of all kinds and of extensive maneuvering with powerful reserves, consisting mainly of tank units and subunits.

Special attention is paid to securing flanks and gaps. At night, gaps may be occupied by small subunits.

To combat the enemy's tanks, firing lines for antitank reserves and tank subunits are prepared on the flanks of, and in the gaps between, defense areas.

9. Defense Under Arctic Conditions

571. As a rule, defense under arctic conditions is organized on separate, most accessible axes. On difficult terrain, the division usually defends several axes where there are roads, while a regiment defends one axis. The depth of the defense zone (sector) must be greater than under normal conditions. The main efforts of the defending troops are concentrated on holding road junctions and the adjacent heights. It becomes of decisive importance to counter the outflanking and enveloping movements of enemy subunits in cross-country vehicles and on skis.

572. The defense is usually organized in the form of separate company and platoon strong points, which are prepared for all-around defense and which can lay down intersecting fire on the axes accessible for enemy operations.

Between regiments, battalions, and companies there can be large intervals and gaps, which it is essential to protect by means of various obstacles and to sweep with fire.

Bays (fiords) must be reliably guarded. Measures are taken to combat reconnaissance and sabotage groups and detachments.

The forward edge of the defense is selected with a view to having good fields of observation and fire.

The system of fire is tied in closely with engineer obstacles and natural obstructions.

573. The division's (regiment's) combat formation is laid out in greater depth. The second echelon (reserve) is disposed in dispersed order in several places near road junctions or on lateral routes in readiness to counterattack, to occupy prepared defense areas, and to destroy the enemy's outflanking detachments and airborne (seaborne) forces. Routes are prepared to move second echelons (reserves), missile subunits, artillery, and antiaircraft weapons.

Counterattacks are carried out usually with small forces, mainly along lateral routes, from reverse slopes of heights and, as a rule, against the flanks and rear of the enemy who has broken through.

CHAPTER 13

Combat When Encircled and Breaking out of Encirclement

574. Encirclement may arise in defense or when troops are withdrawing as a result of an offensive by superior enemy forces, their appearance on the flanks and in the rear of our troops, and the formation of an unbroken circle around our troops.

The division and regiment which find themselves, as a result of a resolute offensive, in the depth of the enemy's dispositions, with enemy troops on their flanks and in their rear, are not surrounded and are obliged to continue to fulfil the task they have been given. Because seeming enciclement will be a frequent phenomenon in modern combat, troops must not be affaid of being encircled and are obliged to take skilful action to counteract it.

575. When the threat of being encircled arises, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer must take all steps to counteract it. For this, he is obliged to do the following:

— conduct reconnaissance, and to secure the flanks, gaps, and the rear areas;

— partially regroup units (subunits) on the threatened axes and to reinforce axes vulnerable to tanks;

— take steps to set up obstacles on the most important approaches to the flanks and rear area;

— rout the enemy carrying out the outflanking movement by fire from artillery, tanks, and other weapons and by decisive counterattacks of second echelons (reserves), and then to continue to carry out the task that has been set;

— take steps to maintain unbroken communications with the senior commander [illegible] and with adjacent troops.

576. If it is surrounded, the division (regiment) is obliged to fight on stubbornly, contributing by its vigorous operations to the fulfilment of the general combat task.

Endurance, initiative, and resoluteness on the part of all commanding officers, steadiness and stubbornness on the part of troops, surprise and vigor in operations, and skilful maneuvering of forces and weapons are the decisive conditions for success in combat when encircled.

577. When the division (regiment) is fighting under conditions of encirclement, it is essential to hold the area occupied, maintaining direct contact with the enemy and not allowing one's own troops to concentrate in a small space where they

could be easily hit by strikes with nuclear weapons, and it is also essential to prevent the encircled troops from being split into pieces.

For this, it is essential to plan all-around defense; to assign strong reserves, which are disposed in dispersed order in several places; to strengthen antitank defense on axes vulnerable to tanks; by fire from artillery and other weapons to inflict decisive blows on the enemy who is striving to tighten the ring of encirclement or to split the troops that have been surrounded; to carry out surprise counterattacks boldly with the aim of destroying the enemy who has driven in a wedge; to cover gaps reliably with fire and to protect them by obstacles.

If units (subunits) of other large units (units) find themselves in the encirclement, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer is obliged to bring them under his command and to unite the efforts of all the troops which are surrounded.

578. The larger part of the artillery of encircled troops is employed under centralized control, and preparations are made to maneuver it to repel attacks from any direction.

To support the fighting of the division and regiment which find themselves surrounded, use may be made of fire from missile units and artillery troops which are outside the encirclement.

Aircraft, besides carrying out the usual tasks, in collaboration with antiaircraft subunits, prevent the blockading of the surrounded troops from the air, deliver supplies to them, and evacuate the sick and wounded, and they also ensure the maintenance of communications between the surrounded troops and the senior commander outside the encirclement.

579. In the encirclement, a strict procedure for the expenditure of materiel of all kinds is established, arrangements are made to receive aircraft and helicopters bringing ammunition and other freight, and also to receive and collect loads dropped by parachute and to evacuate the sick and wounded. Landing strips are prepared to receive aircraft and helicopters.

580. When fighting encircled on a seacoast, large units of the navy may be brought in to fulfil the following tasks:

— delivering strikes against the enemy who is combating the surrounded troops;

— preventing the enemy from delivering strikes against the surrounded troops from the sea;

— supplying the surrounded troops and evacuating the sick and wounded.

581. The division's (regiment's) breakout from encirclement must be undertaken with the permission of the senior commanding commander in an organized way and must be accompanied by the routing of the enemy who is preventing the surrounded troops from breaking out of the encirclement and linking up with their own troops. The breakout from encirclement by small groups and without combat equipment is not permitted.

582. In organizing a break out from encirclement, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer, in setting combat tasks, lays down the following:

— the sector (sectors), axis, and the time for the breakthrough;

— the procedure for exploiting the results of nuclear strikes, of strikes by aircraft, and of artillery fire;

— the grouping of forces and weapons for the breakthrough, the composition of covering subunits, and their tasks;

— the composition and tasks of units (subunits) assigned to act as screening troops for the flanks;

— the forces and weapons for decoy operations and their tasks;

— the procedure for breaking out of the encirclement, and the order in which covering subunits are to withdraw;

— the procedure for collaboration inside the division (regiment) and with troops operating outside the encirclement.

In addition, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer lays down the procedure for evacuating the sick and wounded, and also determines what and at which time should be mined, demolished, or destroyed.

In breaking out of encirclement, as a rule, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer moves with the grouping which is breaking through the front of the encirclement.

For the control of covering units (subunits) and screening troops, a group of officers from headquarters is detailed, usually headed by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer's deputy.

583. It is essential to break through the front of encirclement on the most advantageous axis which will ensure the rapid and secret concentration of troops in the breakthrough sector and which will also ensure a swift breakthrough of the front of encirclement and a link-up with one's own troops.

To carry out the breakthrough, a strike grouping is created in the division (regiment) in which is included, as a rule, the larger part of the tanks and artillery. On the rest of the front, the minimum essential number of covering subunits is left with the task of holding the positions occupied.

With the aim of drawing away part of the enemy's forces from the axis where the breakthrough is to be made, and also of confusing him, strikes may also be delivered on other axes.

Reserves are disposed in areas which ensure their readiness to support the fighting of subunits which have been assigned to cover and develop the success of the breakthrough.

584. The breakthrough of the front of encirclement is usually carried out after preparation fire. Under favorable conditions, use may be made of nuclear weapons. In breaking through at night, it is sometimes advantageous to launch a surprise assault, without preparation fire. In such a case, the artillery opens fire when the attack starts.

The strike grouping breaks through the front of encirclement by launching a swift assault and establishes contact with the troops operating to meet it.

After breaking through the front of encirclement, the main forces of the strike grouping which have participated in the breakthrough are employed to widen the breakthrough or to prevent the enemy from closing the breach which has been made, thus ensuring the break-out of all the troops which were surrounded.

Covering subunits hold the positions occupied, thus preventing the front of encirclement being tightened. These subunits start to withdraw on orders from the divisional (regimental) commanding officer. They withdraw from line to line under covering fire from weapons of all kinds, and making extensive use of obstacles. Units (subunits) which go to form screening troops withdraw last, after troops assigned for covering tasks have passed through.

585. Rear units and subunits are formed into columns and break out of the encirclement behind the troops which are carrying out the breakthrough. Transport vehicles are used in the first place for the evacuation of the sick and wounded.

Part of the combined-arms reserve may be assigned to cover rear units and subunits.

CHAPTER 14

Withdrawal

586. The division (regiment) withdraws in an organized way, secretly, rapidly, and as a rule, its main forces do not stop on intermediate lines. The withdrawal takes place only on orders from the senior commander.

When in close contact with the enemy, the withdrawal starts with the troops breaking off combat.

The division's (regiment's) main forces break off combat and withdraw along as many roads as possible and, as a rule, at night. However, the situation may compel troops to break off combat and to carry out the withdrawal by day. When withdrawing by day, special attention must be paid to the protection of troops against weapons of mass destruction, and to antiair defense.

Success in breaking off combat depends on rapid and secret operations on the part of troops, on skilful use of the terrain, and on extensive use of engineer obstacles.

587. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer makes the decision to withdraw and issues a combat order in which, after giving information about the enemy, the division's (regiment's) tasks, his decision, and the tasks of adjacent troops, he lays down the following:

— the tasks of units (subunits), the zones or routes for the withdrawal, the procedure for breaking off combat, the control lines and the time at which they are to be passed, as well as the final line (area) of withdrawal;

— the composition and tasks of rear guards and of march security detachments;

— the composition and tasks of subunits ensuring the breaking off of the combat by the division's (regiment's) main forces;

— the tasks of missile subunits, artillery, and antiaircraft subunits;

— the control points and the procedure for moving them.

In addition, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer lays down the tasks for supporting aircraft, the measures for seizing, holding, and demolishing important objectives, and the procedure for pulling out rear units and subunits.

588. The breaking off of combat under conditions of vigorous combat operations on the part of the enemy is carried out after the delivery of strikes by aircraft and by artillery, and sometimes also by nuclear weapons.

Reinforced motorized rifle and tank subunits are assigned to cover the breaking off of combat by the division's (regiment's) main forces. These subunits remain in the positions occupied and, with the aim of confusing the enemy, continue the same kind of combat operations as those which preceded the breaking off of combat. Subsequently, these subunits can be employed for the relief or the reinforcement of rear guards.

589. The division's (regiment's) main forces withdraw under cover of the division's general rear guard [four words missing] must under all conditions ensure their disengagement from the enemy and their orderly withdrawal.

The composition of rear guards usually includes reinforced tank units and subunits capable of fulfilling the tasks they have been set independently, without counting on support from the main forces. The operations of rear guards are supported by artillery assigned for the purpose.

To ensure the withdrawal of the division's (regiment's) main forces, rear guards hold a line occupied by them in advance for a definite time. With the permission of the divisional (regimental) commanding officer, rear guards withdraw from line to line, making extensive use of obstacles and carrying out demolitions in the zone of withdrawal. The operations of rear guards at each line must be resolute and vigorous and must be coordinated with the operations of adjacent troops.

590. Under cover of rear guards, the division's (regiment's) main forces close into march columns and withdraw to the areas allotted to them.

In certain cases, the division's (regiment's) main forces may be deployed to deliver strikes against enemy troops which reach the routes of withdrawal of our troops.

591. To counter the enemy's outflanking and enveloping movements and to exclude surprise attacks on the division's (regiment's) main forces, flank detachments

(flank march security detachments) are pushed out to the flanks and intersect the enemy's probable movement routes and detain him until the main forces and rear guards have passed through.

With the aim of preventing the enemy from seizing gorges, bridges, crossings, and road junctions on the withdrawal routes, it is essential that they should be occupied by subunits sent forward in advance and held until the main forces have passed through, and until the rear guards approach.

The divisional (regimental) commanding officer determines what objectives are to be demolished, at what time and on whose instructions, and nominates responsible commanding officers and engineer subunits for this.

592. The division's tank regiment may constitute the rear guard or may form part of the main forces. When operating as a rear guard, the tank regiment is reinforced by motorized rifle, artillery, and engineer subunits.

The tank battalion of the motorized rifle regiment is employed for operations together with covering subunits, in the rear guard, and as a component part of the main forces.

593. During a withdrawal, reconnaissance must detect in good time the presence of nuclear attack weapons, the forces, composition, character of operations, and intentions of the enemy, especially his efforts to reach the division's (regiment's) flanks; it must also continuously watch the state of adjacent troops and also establish the presence of obstacles and demolitions on the withdrawal routes.

594. The division's missile subunits and artillery, operating as component parts of the main forces, support the fighting of rear guards and counteract the enemy's outflanking and enveloping movements.

Artillery in rear guards destroys the enemy, especially his tanks which are attacking from the front and on the flanks, and also supports the withdrawal of rear guards and their fighting on new lines.

Antiaircraft subunits together with fighter aircraft cover the withdrawal of the main forces, especially when they pass through gorges, over bridges, and other crossings, and also cover the combat operations of rear guards.

595. In supporting the withdrawal, aircraft carry out the following tasks:

— reconnaissance of the enemy, and first of all of the enemy threatening the flanks of the retreating forces;

— deliver strikes, including nuclear ones, against the enemy's main grouping, and prevent him from carrying out enveloping and outflanking movements;

— impede the landing of, and wipe out, enemy troops landed on the withdrawal routes;

— destroy the enemy's bridges and crossings, and stretches of roads and other structures, after our troops have withdrawn.

596. In organizing engineer support for the withdrawal, provision is made for the following: setting up obstacles and destroying roads, bridges, and other targets, especially on the flanks of the withdrawing troops; preparation of routes for the withdrawal; equipping; and maintaining crossings; and setting up obstacles on deployment lines to support the fighting of the division's (regiment's) rear guards and main forces.

597. Control of troops when they are breaking off combat is exercised from the command post, which moves together with the main forces.

During a withdrawal, the command post moves in such a place that the divisional (regimental) commanding officer should be constantly able to control the main forces. To control the fighting of rear guards, the command post is set up successively on the lines allotted to the rear guard.

The rear control point moves simultaneously with rear units (subunits).

598. All rear units and subunits which are not needed for direct support of troops are withdrawn in good time to the areas allocated to them. Sick and wounded are evacuated in advance. In units and large units only essential mobile supplies of materiel and some of the repair and rescue and medical resources are left. Medical subunits which are serving rear guards are, if necessary, reinforced with transport for the timely evacuation of the sick and wounded.

CHAPTER 15

Disposition of Troops for a Halt and Their Protection

599. Troops which are in reserve in an assembly area or in a concentration area are disposed on terrain where there are favorable conditions to organize protection against weapons of mass destruction, terrain which has natural camouflage features, and which facilitates the carrying out of essential maneuvers. The disposition of troops near probable targets for enemy nuclear strikes should be avoided. Troops, when disposed for a halt, should be in constant combat readiness to repel the air and ground enemy.

600. The division is allotted a main and an alternate disposition area. Alternate disposition areas for regiments within the divisional area are not allotted. The size of the area for a division is 400 to 600, and for a regiment 100 to 150 square kilometers.

Disposition areas for troops must meet the following requirements:

— dispersed and concealed location of troops;

— possibility of rapid mustering of troops when the alarm is given and of moving them in the required direction;

— comfortable location and rest for troops;

— favorable conditions from the sanitary and health standpoints;

— availability of sources of water in sufficient quantity, and of roads and approach routes suitable for use by transport.

For the selection of areas for the disposition of troops, reconnoitering groups (billeting parties) are sent out in advance in which officers of the arms of troops and representatives of units (subunits) are included, and radiation, chemical, engineer, and bacteriological reconnaissance of these areas is organized.

601. To protect personnel against nuclear weapons, slit trenches are dug in the disposition areas and, if time permits, dugouts and shelters, equipped in antinuclear and antichemical respects, are prepared. Shelters are equipped

for arms and equipment, as well as for supplies of materiel. With the aim of ensuring the movement of the troops, existing roads are reconnoitered, and a network of frontal and lateral routes is prepared.

Engineer preparation in the disposition areas is started as soon as the troops arrive, and if circumstances permit it, in advance.

602. When disposing troops in an area previously occupied by the enemy, thorough reconnaissance of the area is first carried out with the aim of doing the following;

— detecting and wiping out the enemy's reconnaissance and sabotage groups;

— locating and marking out the mined and contaminated sectors of the terrain;

— determining whether the water and any foodstuffs left behind by the enemy are fit for use, and whether there is any possibility of making use of other materiel.

As a rule, areas where there is residual radiation, and also areas which have been mined by the enemy, are not occupied by troops.

603. In his order for the disposition of the troops, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer gives the following:

— information about the enemy;

— the disposition areas of units (subunits);

— the composition, tasks, and zones (sectors) of the security outposts and which unit (subunit) is to mount them;

— antiair defense tasks;

— measures for protection against the enemy's weapons of mass destruction;

— measures for ensuring combat readiness and repelling of a surprise enemy attack;

— the alternate area and the procedure for moving to it;

— the unit (subunit) on duty and its tasks;

— the organization of control and communications.

604. The disposition areas are given to units (subunits) in advance and are occupied by the troops as they approach them. The stopping of columns on roads to await the allocation of areas is not permitted.

With the aim of ensuring concealment and orderly disposition of troops, of regulating their movements, and of keeping an eye on camouflage, commandant's service is organized in advance.

605. The division (regiment) is disposed in dispersed order taking into account the impending operations and the requirements for rapid deployment. Regiments, battalions, and companies are usually located along main movement routes and to the side of them, at distances and intervals which will exclude the possibility of presenting the enemy with good targets for a nuclear strike.

Rear units (of the division) are usually located in an independent area, near routes on which supplies are brought up and near evacuation routes, while the rear services of units are in their disposition areas.

Areas in which the enemy might land airborne forces are kept under observation.

The division's (regiment's) command post is usually set up in an area convenient for the maintenance of uninterrupted communications with troops and control of the troops, both while they are on the spot as well as when they begin to move from the area they occupy.

The rear control point is set up in the disposition area of the division's (regiment's) rear units (subunits).

As a rule, control of troops when they are disposed for a halt is exercised through personal contact by staff officers, mobile means [one line missing] permitted only for notification and for directing the fire of antiair defense weapons.

606. Antiaircraft missile units and subunits are disposed with a view to creating, in combination with the antiaircraft missile weapons of the senior commander

and of adjacent troops, a general zone covering the approaches to the troop disposition area.

Antiaircraft artillery batteries are deployed to provide direct cover for the most important objectives of their regiments. To destroy low-flying aircraft, extensive use is made by regiments of small arms.

607. The main attention in protecting troops against weapons of mass destruction is given to the organization of continuous radiation, chemical, and bacteriological reconnaissance of the disposition areas, of alternate areas, and of the movement routes leading to them, to the equipping of shelters, to carrying out sanitary and prophylactic measures, and to restoring the combat effectiveness of troops who have been subjected to the effects of radioactive, toxic, and bacterial substances.

608. Troops when disposed for the halt are protected by local security troops, and if there is a threat of attack by enemy ground troops, also by security outposts mounted by regiments in the zones (sectors) given to them.

The number and composition of security outpost elements is determined by the distance from the enemy, the importance of the axis which is being protected by these elements, the time needed to deploy the troops which are being protected, the nature of the terrain, and the situation.

Security outposts consist of outpost detachments, usually composed of a reinforced company; of outpost supports, composed of a reinforced platoon; and of independent field sentries. In certain cases, a reinforced battalion may be assigned for duty as an outpost detachment.

Security outpost elements must cover all the main and important roads and approaches to the area which is being protected. In its zone (sector) the regiment sends out to the important axis an outpost detachment consisting of a reinforced company, and to secondary axes, outpost supports consisting of a reinforced platoon or independent field sentries. For local security, the regiment sets up sentry posts and organizes patrolling. In certain cases, field sentries are set out on an important axis.

The outpost detachment (independent outpost support) is given a protection zone, a defensive position, and a line up to which it has to conduct reconnaissance. The front of a protection zone can be: for an outpost detachment up to a battalion in strength, about ten km; for a reinforced company, about three to five km, for an outpost support con-

sisting of a reinforced platoon, about two km.

609. The distance of the security outposts from the troops being protected must be such that the troops can be warned in time about the appearance of the enemy and that the outposts can support with their operations the deployment and commitment to combat of the troops being protected; on an average it is 10 to 15 km.

The line of outpost supports must run along a line suitable for defense and protected by antitank obstructions, and one which provides a good field of view in the direction of the enemy.

610. The appearance of the enemy is reported immediately by the commander of the outpost detachment (independent outpost support) to the senior [illegible] commander [illegible], and the adjacent detachments (outpost supports) are also informed. The outpost detachment (independent outpost support) defends stubbornly the line it has occupied, ensuring the deployment of the main forces.

611. The troop disposition areas are changed on instructions from the senior [illegible] commander [illegible], and if the enemy employs weapons of mass destruction against the troop disposition area of the troops, they are changed on orders from the divisional commanding officer. As a rule, medical treatment of personnel and decontamination of combat equipment are carried out outside the new troop disposition areas.

612. In mountainous country, troops should be disposed in areas where the nature of the terrain and the network of roads ensure that the troops can move up quickly onto the required axes or deploy to repel enemy attacks, and also that they can be disposed concealed and in dispersed order.

Troops must not be disposed in places where landslides, avalanches, and flooding may occur. Security outposts are sent out to occupy road junctions, bridges, commanding heights, and mountain passageways and passes.

613. For the disposition of troops in forests, it is advisable to locate them on the edges of the forest near roads and lanes.

In case forest fires should break out, as many routes and lanes as possible are prepared, and several alternative ways of using them are worked out for troops when moving out of the disposition area.

Rescue work and extinguishing of fires is undertaken by specially assigned subunits and, if necessary, by all the personnel.

614. For the disposition of troops under winter conditions, areas are selected which are protected from the wind and where there is fuel.

In organizing protection, steps are taken to safeguard troops against surprise attacks by detachments on skis and detachments operating in cross-country vehicles. Subunits assigned for duty as security troops are provided with cross-country transport vehicles and skis.

Special attention is paid to keeping roads in a useable state, to maintaining arms and equipment in combat readiness under conditions of low temperatures, and also to measures to prevent personnel from being frostbitten.

615. In desert and steppes, troops are disposed in dispersed order outside oases and other permanent points or local objects which stand out sharply.

Food, water, and technical needs for the resting troops are supplied by being brought up behind the troops, by pipelines (water pipes), by mechanized digging of wells and slits, and also by making use of distillation equipment when using water from salt water mountain lakes.

Special attention is paid to camouflage, to anti-air defense, to reconnaissance of sand from the radioactive contamination standpoint and to its shifting, to measures to prevent infectious diseases, to economy in the use of water and fuel, and also to the protection of water supply points.

CHAPTER 16

Material, Technical, and Medical Support for Troops in Combat

1. General Principles

616. Modern combat demands a large expenditure of materiel, especially of ammunition and fuel, the rapid putting back into service of damaged equipment of all kinds, and the timely rendering of medical aid to the sick and wounded. Therefore, continuous material and technical support is one of the decisive conditions for the successful conduct of combat operations, and constitutes the most important duty of commanding officers, of their deputies for rear services and technical units, and of chiefs of the arms of troops, of special troops, and of services.

617. The rear area of troops (voyskovoy tyl) consists of rear area units and subunits which form an organic part of large units, units, and subunits. Being highly mobile, it is capable of moving behind the troops and of providing material, technical, and medical support in any situation, deploying for this purpose either partly or fully.

With the aim of providing timely support for the troops during combat operations and of dispersing the supplies of materiel, the rear area of the division (regiment) is usually divided into echelons.

In the first echelon of the regiment's rear area are included: the medical post, part of the motor-transport subunits with supplies of ammunition and foodstuffs, and means to repair combat and special vehicles; in the second echelon are motor-transport subunits with supplies of fuel, ammunition, military-technical gear, clothing and foodstuffs, and a repair workshop.

In the first echelon of the division's rear area are included: the medical battalion, part of the motor-transport subunits with supplies of ammunition, fuel and foodstuffs, and subunits of the repair and reconstruction battalion to repair combat and special vehicles; in the second echelon are motor-transport subunits with supplies of fuel, ammunition, armored and military-technical gear, clothing and foodstuffs, the repair and reconstruction battalion, and the field mechanized bakery.

618. In making a decision for combat operations, the divisional (regimental) commanding officer determines the main questions in regard to the organization of the rear area in combat and sets tasks for material, technical, and medical support of the troops. He directs the rear area through his deputy for rear services.

The division's (regiment's) chief of staff ensures coordination in the work of the commanding officer's deputies for rear services and for technical matters, and of the chiefs of the arms of troops, special troops, and services in organizing and planning the work of the rear area, and he also supervises this work. He must always know what supplies of materiel are available and in what condition the combat equipment is, he must give timely warning to the commanding officer's deputies for rear services and for technical matters and to the chiefs of the services about impending combat operations, about proposed measures, and all changes in the situation, and he must ensure uninterrupted communications for control of the rear area.

619. The divisional (regimental) commanding officer's deputy for rear services is directly responsible for organizing the rear area, for the bringing up of materiel of all kinds, and for the support of the troops by subordinate services. His instructions concerning the organization of the rear area and the bringing up of materiel are binding for the chiefs of the arms of troops, special troops, and services.

In conformity with the decision made by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer, the deputy for rear services determines the following: the supply routes and the echeloning of rear area units (subunits) and the procedure to be followed by them when moving during combat; the quantities and echeloning of supplies, the expenditure of fuel, the order in which and the time at which supplies are to be delivered to units (subunits), the main measures for providing the division with medical support, for the protection, defense, and guarding of the rear area of troops, and for organizing control of the rear area.

The organization plan for the rear area and for the bringing up of supplies is confirmed by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer.

The tasks for the rear area are conveyed to those who have to carry them out in the form of instructions and, in certain cases, by an order for the division's (regiment's) rear area.

620. The commanding officer's deputy for technical matters, and chiefs of the arms of troops, special troops, and services directly plan and organize material and technical support in their speciality, and bear the responsibility for this. They are obliged: to report in time to the chief of staff about the state of technical and material support, and to inform the commanding officer's deputy for the rear area about the extent to which troops are provided with supplies, and to send in requisitions to him for the delivery of supplies; to give the necessary instructions to subordinate chiefs of services; to see that the materiel is expended correctly and to submit reports on its consumption; to direct the work of subordinate rear area units and subunits.

2. Organization of the Rear Area of Troops

621. The organization of the rear area of troops includes the preparation, deployment, and moving of rear area units (subunits) with the aim of providing timely and uninterrupted material, technical, and medical support for the troops, fixing and preparing routes to bring up supplies and for evacuation, and implementing measures for the protection, defense, and guarding of the rear area.

622. As a rule, rear area units and subunits are deployed in the zone (area) of operations of a large unit (unit).

The disposition of the echelons of the division's (regiment's) rear area depends on the nature of the combat operations and on the situation.

The first echelon of the regiment's (division's) rear area is usually located behind the regiment's (division's) combat formation, and during combat moves immediately behind it with the essential mobile supplies.

The second echelons of the rear area of regiments are deployed in the disposition area of the first echelon of the division's rear area.

The second echelon of the division's rear area is disposed at the junction for the delivery of supplies by army and divisional elements, behind the division's combat formation at a distance of 30 to 50 km, ensuring the timely delivery of supplies to units.

If necessary, the first echelon of the regiment's (division's) rear area may be deployed between the first

echelon and the combined-arms reserve of the regiment (division), or on a level with the location of the reserve.

The moving of rear area units and subunits is organized with a view to ensuring uninterrupted provision of material, technical, and medical support for the troops engaged in combat operations.

623. To bring up supplies and for evacuation, routes to bring up supplies and for evacuation are allotted in the large unit's (unit's) zone of operations, use being made for this purpose of the network of military roads. Measures for preparing the routes and maintaining them in a usable state are worked out by the large unit (unit) commanding officer's deputy for rear services, together with the unit engineer.

624. Rear area units and subunits move and are disposed in the allotted areas in dispersed order with observance of camouflage measures. As a rule, local guarding and defense of their disposition areas (places) and protection against weapons of mass destruction are undertaken by the forces and weapons of the rear area units and subunits.

If there are hostile elements of the population or enemy groups in the rear area of the troops, it is essential to reinforce the defense and guarding of rear area units and subunits, especially of transport with missiles, not allow vehicles to move singly, and to take steps to clear areas of remnants of enemy groups and saboteurs.

625. Rear area reconnaissance is carried out to study the deployment areas for rear area units (subunits) and the routes for bringing up supplies and for evacuation; to establish the availability and possibility of utilizing local means; to determine the health and veterinary-epizootic conditions in the areas where the troops are operating; and also to establish the water supply conditions. It is organized by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer's deputy for the rear services.

3. Material Support

626. Material support for the troops is provided in respect to the different types of supplies which [one line missing].

The main materiel for the supplying of troops is the following: missiles, ammunition, fuel, means of pro-

tection against weapons of mass destruction, and foodstuffs.

For all cases of combat operations by troops, arrangements are made to provide the troops with water.

In large units, units, and subunits, prescribed mobile supplies of materiel are maintained and are constantly replenished by supplies brought up from the rear area.

The mobile supplies are divided into expendable supplies and emergency supplies which are used, as a rule, with the permission of the regimental commanding officer, and in special cases, when delay would be fatal, with the permission of the battalion commanding officer.

Depending on the situation, additional supplies of materiel may be built up by troops on instructions from the senior commander.

With the aim of protecting supplies of materiel against contamination by radioactive and toxic substances and bacterial means, they are kept and transported, as a rule, packaged or under cover.

627. For the timely delivery of materiel to large units (units, subunits), the responsibility lies on the formation (large unit, unit) commander's (commanding officer's) deputy for rear services, and for the bringing up of missiles on special transport — on the chief of the artillery armament service of the large unit.

The bringing up of materiel from the mobile army base to divisions is done by army transport; from divisional mobile depots to regiments, by divisional transport.

In certain cases, materiel may be delivered from army (divisional) depots direct to regiments (battalions) and to artillery firing positions.

Fuel and ammunition are delivered in all cases to combat vehicles; during combat, tanks are supplied directly in their combat formations without being withdrawn to the rear.

As a rule, the bringing up of materiel to the combined-arms reserves and to units of special troops is carried out by their own transport.

628. Empty transport proceeding to the rear is used first of all for the evacuation of the sick and wounded, and the remaining transport is loaded with equipment and gear which has to be evacuated.

629. When freight is delivered to troops by air transport, the divisional commanding officer's deputy for the rear area organizes the preparation and the marking out of landing strips or areas to receive freight, the unloading or the collection of dropped freight, its protection, and its delivery to units (subunits).

4. Technical Support

630. Technical support is carried out with the aim of maintaining armament, armored, motor-tractor, and other equipment in a state of repair and in constant readiness for use in combat, and of rapidly putting back into service damaged vehicles and equipment.

Technical support is planned and organized personally by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer's deputy for technical matters and by the chiefs of the appropriate services.

The plan for technical support is confirmed by the divisional (regimental) commanding officer.

631. As a rule, technical servicing of armament and vehicles is carried out before combat (marching) and after the fulfilment of the combat task, and, if necessary, also during combat operations. In the first place, vehicles are filled with fuel and lubricating oil, their ammunition supplies are replenished, and any faults that have come to light are rectified.

632. The repair of equipment and armament which have been put out of action is undertaken by repair subunits of regiments and repair units of divisions.

In the regiment, current repairs, and in the division, field maintenance of combat equipment are carried out, as well as current repairs of vehicles and armament which are not being dealt with by the repair means of regiments.

With the aim of maintaining units in a condition of high combat effectiveness and of ensuring that they can carry out continuous combat operations, the repairs done first of all are those to combat equipment requiring the minimum amount of work and which after being repaired is immediately put back into service. As a rule, repairs to this equipment are carried out at the place where it has

been damaged or in the nearest shelters.

Vehicles and armament which have not been repaired on the spot are evacuated to assembly points for damaged vehicles of the division (regiment), where repair subunits (units) are deployed.

Damaged equipment needing general overhaul and, during an offensive, also equipment needing field maintenance calling for much work are handed over to repair units of formations.

633. Divisional (regimental) assembly points for damaged vehicles are organized in areas where the greatest number of vehicles put out of action have collected close to supply and evacuation routes.

At the assembly point for damaged vehicles, the nature of the damage and the amount of work required on each vehicle are determined, and those vehicles which can be put back into service quickly are repaired.

The rest of the unrepaired equipment and armament is handed over on the spot to higher repair and evacuation elements.

5. Medical Support

634. Medical support is organized with the aim of maintaining the combat effectiveness and improving the health of personnel, of affording timely medical aid and assistance to and the evacuation of the sick and wounded, of treating them and returning them as soon as possible to their units (subunits), and of giving warnings about outbreaks and spreading of illnesses among the troops.

Attention to medical support for the large unit (unit) is one of the most important duties of all commanding officers, commanders, and political workers.

The divisional surgeon (senior surgeon of the regiment) personally plans, organizes, and is held responsible for the medical support of the division (regiment).

635. Medical assistance to the sick and wounded in combat is provided in the following way:

— medical first aid — by the military personnel themselves and by medical orderlies of subunits on the spot where the wound has occurred or in the nearest shelters;

— premedical (medical assistant's) aid — at the battalion medical post;

— first medical assistance — including uncomplicated surgical intervention, and, when possible, also qualified assistance, at the regimental medical post;

— qualified medical assistance — including surgical operations, in the medical battalion.

Qualified medical assistance is given also in independent medical detachments, which can be sent by the chief of the medical service of the army for work in the division's zone of operations.

636. All medical posts must accept the sick and wounded and give them medical aid regardless of their parent unit.

For medical support of the division, with the permission of the divisional commanding officer, use is made of the forces and means of the medical service of attached units.

With the aim of providing medical aid as quickly as possible, medical posts make every possible effort to keep close to units and to move up in good time behind them, while steps are also taken to reduce the time needed to carry the sick and wounded from the field of combat and for their evacuation.

637. As a rule, the evacuation of the sick and wounded is undertaken by the ambulance transport of the higher formation (large unit), and also by supply transport and ambulance and military-transport aircraft.

Attached units (large units) evacuate the sick and wounded to the nearest medical posts by means of their own transport.

Those suffering from infectious illnesses are evacuated to special hospitals by ambulance separately from other sick and wounded.

638. With the aim of protecting troops from weapons of mass destruction, the divisional surgeon (senior surgeon of the regiment) organizes and conducts a medical watch on personnel who have been exposed to the effects of radiation

and to chemical and bacterial substances; he also organizes and conducts sanitation and prophylactic measures, as well as bacteriological and other forms of reconnaissance carried out for the medical service.

When eliminating the effects of the employment of weapons of mass destruction by the enemy, the divisional surgeon (senior surgeon of the regiment) organizes and puts into effect treatment and evacuation, and sanitation and prophylactic measures.

639. In planning medical support for the large unit (unit), provision is made for the following: the organizing and carrying out of treatment and evacuation measures in the centers of mass destruction; the moving of medical posts and the places where they are to be set up; the use of independent medical detachments and of medical posts of attached units; the procedure for evacuating the sick and wounded; and measures to protect personnel and medical posts against weapons of mass destruction.

6. Burying the Dead in Combat

640. The burying of military personnel who have fallen (died) in combat is organized by unit and large unit commanding officers' deputies for rear services in accordance with established procedure and is carried out by specially detailed subunits under the command of an officer. Before burial, those who have fallen in combat are identified by the documents on them. The commanding officers of subunits report each casualty in combat (death) in accordance with instructions.

The graves are marked with signs which are clearly visible and which will last a long time.

Checking to ensure that sanitary and hygienic requirements are met in selecting the place for the grave of a comrade and in burying him is organized by the divisional surgeon (senior surgeon of the regiment).

7. Evacuation of Prisoners of War

641. Prisoners of war are conducted immediately out of the area of combat operations and, on the instructions of the commanding officers of units, are escorted to the divisional P.O.W. point, set up behind the division's combat formation. Subsequently, on instructions from army headquarters, they

are evacuated to army P.O.W. points.

The care of prisoners of war and the provision of medical facilities for them while they are at the divisional point are organized by the divisional commanding officer's deputy for rear services.

Wounded and sick prisoners of war are evacuated and housed at medical posts separately from military personnel of the Soviet Army.